



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08231304 4

1825

1825

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF THE
LATIN TONGUE;

OR,
A PLAIN AND EASY INTRODUCTION

TO
LATIN GRAMMAR:

WHEREIN THE PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE ARE
METHODICALLY DIGESTED,

BOTH IN ENGLISH AND LATIN.

WITH USEFUL NOTES AND OBSERVATIONS,
EXPLAINING THE TERMS OF GRAMMAR, AND FURTHER IMPROVING
ITS RULES.

BY THOMAS RUDDIMAN, M. A.

*Carefully Revised and Corrected from the latest
Edinburgh Edition.*

STEREOTYPED BY B. AND J. COLLINS, NEW-YORK.

NEW-YORK:

PUBLISHED BY COLLINS AND HANNAY,

No. 230 PEARL-STREET.

1831.



TRANSFER FROM LENOX.

HOWARD
MUNN
WALKER

104

THE
RUDIMENTS

OF THE

LATIN TONGUE:

OR,

A PLAIN AND EASY INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PARS PRIMA.

De LITTERIS et SYLLABIS.

Magister.

QUOT sunt Literæ apud Latinus?

Discipulus. Quinque et viginti; a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales et Consonantes.

M. Quot sunt Vocales?

D. Sex; a, e, i, o, u, y.

M. Quot sunt Consonantes?

D. Novemdecim; b, c, d, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z.

M. Quot sunt Diphthongi?

PART FIRST.

Of Letters and Syllables

Master

How many Letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. Five and twenty, a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Vowels and Consonants.*

M. *How many Vowels are there?*

S. *Six; a, e, i, o, u, y.*

M. *How many Consonants are there?*

S. *Nineteen; b, c, d, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

M. *How many Diphthongs are there?*

<p>D. <i>Quinque</i> ; <i>ae</i> (vel <i>æ</i>), <i>oe</i> (vel <i>æ</i>), <i>au</i>, <i>eu</i>, <i>ei</i> ; <i>ut</i>, <i>aetas</i>, vel <i>atlas</i> ; <i>poena</i>, vel <i>paena</i>, <i>audio</i>, <i>euge</i>, <i>hei</i>.</p>	<p>S. <i>Five</i> ; <i>ae</i> (or <i>æ</i>), <i>oe</i> (or <i>æ</i>), <i>au</i>, <i>eu</i>, <i>ei</i> ; <i>as aetas</i>, or <i>aetas</i>, <i>poena</i>, or <i>paena</i>, <i>audio</i>, <i>euge</i>, <i>hei</i>.</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

NOTES.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking any language rightly ; as, *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, English, &c.*

Latin Grammar is the art of speaking rightly the *Latin tongue*.

The **RUDIMENTS** of that Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles, or the most common and necessary rules of *Latin*.

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to these four heads ; I. *Treating of Letters*. II. *Of Syllables*. III. *Of Words*. IV. *Of Sentences*.

These are naturally made up one of another ; for one or more letters make a syllable, one or more syllables make a word, and two or more words make a sentence.

A *letter* is a mark or character representing an uncompound sound.

K, Y, Z, are only to be found in words originally *Greek* ; and **H,** by some, is not accounted a letter, but a breathing.

We reckon the *J*, called *Jod* (or *Je*), and the *V*, called *Vau*, two letters distinct from *I* and *U* ; because, not only their figures, but their powers or sounds are quite different ; *J* sounding like *G* before *E*, and *V* almost like *F*.

A *Vowel* is a letter that makes a full and perfect sound by itself.

A *Consonant* is a letter that cannot sound without a vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete sound.

There can be no syllable without a vowel ; and any of the six vowels alone, or any vowel with one or more consonants before or after it, makes a syllable.

There are, for the most part, as many syllables in a word as there are vowels in it ; only there are two kinds of syllables in which it is otherwise, viz. 1. When *U* with any other vowel, comes after *G, Q, or S* ; as in *lingua, qui, suadeo*, where the sound of the *U* vanishes, or is little heard. 2. When two vowels join to make a diphthong or double vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a sound compounded of the sounds of two vowels, so as both of them are heard.

Of *diphthongs* three are proper, viz. *au, eu, ei*, in which both vowels are heard ; and two improper, viz. *æ, œ*, in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* simple.

Some, not without reason, to these five diphthongs add other three; *as, ai, in maia, in troia, yi or ui in harpyia or harpua.*

PARS SECUNDA.

De Dictionibus.

M. Quot sunt partes Orationis?

D. Octo; *Nomen Pronomen, Verbum, Participium, Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Coniunctio.*

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Declinabiles et Indclinabiles.

M. Quot sunt Declinabiles?

D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*

M. Quot sunt Indclinabiles?

D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Coniunctio.*

PART SECOND.

Of Words.

M. How many parts of Speech are there?

S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

M. How are they divided?

S. Into declinable and Indclinable.

M. How many are Declinable?

S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.

M. How many are Indclinable?

S. Likewise four; Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A *Word* (*vox* or *dictio*) is one or more syllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to signify something.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Classes*, called *Parts of Speech*; but some comprise them all under three classes, viz. *Noun, Verb, and Adverb*. Under *Noun* they comprehend also *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb* also *Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction*. Others, to these add a fourth class, viz. *Adnoun*, comprehending *Adjectives* under it, and restricting *Nouns* to *Substantives* only. These by some are otherwise called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations, and Particles*.

The declinable parts of speech are so called because there is some change made upon them, especially in their last syllables; and this is what we call *declension*, or *declining* of words. But the indeclinable parts continue unchangeably the same.

The last syllable on which these changes fall, is called the *ending* or *termination* of words.

These changes are made by what grammarians call *Accidents*, i. e. the *Accidents* of words.

These *Accidents* are commonly reckoned six, viz. *Gender*, *Case*, *Number*, *Mood*, *Tense*, and *Person*. Of these *Gender* and *Case* are peculiar to three of the declinable parts of speech, viz. *Noun*, *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and *Mood*, *Tense*, and *Person* are peculiar to one of them, viz. *Verb*; and *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE 1. That *Person* may also be said to belong to *Noun* or *Pronoun*, but then it is not properly an *Accident*, because no change is made by it in the word.

NOTE 2. That *Figure*, *Species*, and *Comparison*, which some call *Accidents*, do not properly come under that name, because the words have a different signification from what they had before. See *Chap. IX.*

NOTE 3. That the changes that happen to a *Noun*, *Pronoun*, and *Participle*, are in a stricter sense, called *Declension*, or *Declination* of them; and the changes that happen to a *Verb* are called *Conjugation*.

CAP. I.

De Nomine.

M. Quomodo declinatur nomen?

D. Per genera, casus, et numeros.

M. Quot sunt genera?

D. Tria; *masculinum*, *fœmininum*, et *neutrum*.

M. Quot sunt casus?

D. Sex; *nominativus*, *genitivus*, *dativus*, *accusativus*, *vocativus* et *ablativus*.

M. Quot sunt numeri?

D. Duo; *singularis* et *pluralis*.

M. Quot sunt declinationes?

D. Quinque; *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, *quarta*, et *quinta*.

CHAP. I.

Of Noun.

M. How is a noun declined?

S. By genders, cases, and numbers.

M. How many genders are there?

S. Three; masculine, feminine, and neuter.

M. How many cases are there?

S. Six; nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.

M. How many numbers are there?

S. Two; singular and plural.

M. How many declensions are there?

S. Five; first, second, third, fourth, and fifth.

REGULÆ GENERALES.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent nominativum, Accusativum, et Vocativum, similes in utroque numero; et hi casus in plurali semper desinunt in a.

2. Vocativus in singulari, plerumque, in plurali semper, est similis nominativo.

3. Dativus et ablativus pluralis sunt similes.

4. Nomina propria plerumque carent plurali.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, alike in both numbers; and these cases in the plural end always in a.

2. The vocative for the most part in the singular [and] always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and ablativ plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

A *Noun* is that part of speech which signifies the name or quality of a thing; as *homo*, a man; *bonus*, good.

A *noun* is either *substantive* or *adjective*.

A *substantive noun* is that which signifies the name of a thing; as *arbor*, a tree; *virtus*, virtue; *bonitas*, goodness.

An *adjective noun* is that which signifies an accident, quality, or property of a thing; as *albus*, white; *felix*, happy; *gravis*, heavy.

A *substantive* may be distinguished from an *adjective* these two ways; 1. A *substantive* can stand in a sentence without an *adjective*, but an *adjective* cannot without a *substantive*; as I can say *a stone falls*; but I cannot say *heavy falls*. 2. If the word *thing* be joined with an *adjective*, it will make sense; but if it be joined with a *substantive*, it will make nonsense. Thus we say *a good thing*, *a white thing*; but we do not say, *a man thing*, *a beast thing*.

A *substantive noun* is divided into *proper* and *appellative*.

A *proper substantive* is that which agrees to one particular thing of a kind; as *Virgilius*, a man's name, *Penelope*, a woman's name; *Scotia*, Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taux*, the Bay.

An *appellative substantive* is that which is common to a whole kind of things; as *vir*, a man; *femina*, a woman; *regnum*, kingdom; *urbs*, a city; *fluvius*, a river.

NOTE. That when a *proper name* is applied to many, it becomes an *appellative*, as *duodēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

Gender in a natural sense is the distinction of sex or the difference between male and female; but in a grammatical sense we commonly understand by it, the fitness that a *substantive noun* hath to be joined to an *adjective* of such a termination, and not of another—Therefore,

Of names of animals, the *hes* are of the masculine, and the *shes* of the feminine gender; but of things without life, and where the diversity of sex is not considered, even of things that have life, some are of the masculine, others of the feminine, and others of the neuter gender, according to the use of the best authors of the Latin tongue.

Besides these three principal genders, there are reckoned also other three less principal, which are nothing else but compounds of the three former; viz. the *gender common to two*, the *gender common to three*, and the *doubtful gender*.

1. The *common gender*, or gender common to two (*genus commune*, or *commune dūm*,) is masculine and feminine; and belongs to such nouns as agree to both sexes; as, *parens*, a father or mother; *bos*, an ox or cow.

2. The *gender common to three*, (*genus commune trium*) is masculine, feminine, and neuter, and belongs only to adjectives; whereof some have three terminations, the first masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter; as, *bonus*, *bona*, *bonum*, good. Some have two, the first masculine and feminine, and the second neuter; as, *mollis*, *molle*, soft. And some have but one termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three genders; as, *prudens*, wise.

3. The *doubtful gender* (*genus dubium*,) belongs to such nouns as are found in good authors, sometimes in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masc. or fem.; *vulgus*, the rabble, masc. or neut.

[We have excepted out of the number of genders the *epicene*, or *promiscuous gender*; for properly speaking, there is no such gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed *epicene nouns*, that is some names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the gender of their termination, as *aquila*, an eagle, femin. because it ends in *a*; *passer*, a sparrow, masc. because it ends in *er*. (See p. 12, and 15.) So, *homo*, a man or woman, masc.; *mancipium*, a slave, neut.; *anguis*, a serpent, doubtful.]

To distinguish these genders we make use of these three words, *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*; which are commonly, though improperly called articles. *Hic* is the sign of the masculine, *hæc*, of the feminine, and *hoc* of the neuter gender; *hic et hæc* of the common to two; *hic, hæc, hoc*, of the common to three; *hic, aut hæc, hic, aut hoc, &c.* of the doubtful.

By *cases*, we understand the different terminations that nouns receive in declining; so called from *cadere*, to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the nominative, which is therefore called *casus rectus*, the straight case; as the other five are named *obliqui*, crooked.

The *singular number* denotes one single thing; as *homo*, a man; the plural denotes more things than one; as, *homines*, men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the declension of Latin nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general view of

THE DECLENSION OF ENGLISH NOUNS.

1. The English language hath the two *genders* of nature, viz. masculine and feminine; for animals in it are called *he* or *she*, according to the difference of their sex; and almost every thing without life is called *it*. But because all the adjectives of this language are of one termination, it has no occasion for any other genders.

2. The English, properly speaking, has no *cases*, because there is no alteration made in the words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little words called *particles*.

Thus the *nominative case* is the simple noun itself. The particle *of* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *genitive*; *to* or *for* before it makes the *dative*; the *accusative* is the same with the *nominative*; the *vocative* hath *O* before it; and the *ablative* hath *with, from, in, by, &c.*

NOTE. 1. That when a substantive comes before a verb, it is called the *nominative*; when it follows after a verb active, without a preposition intervening, it is called the *accusative*.

NOTE. 2. The genitive of words ending in *s* or *ss*, or of plural nouns ending in *s*, is expressed by adding the apostrophe; as, *the soldiers' valor*; *for righteousness' sake*; *the muses' aid*.

NOTE. 3. That *to*, the sign of the dative, and *O* of the vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides these, there are other two little words called *articles*, which are commonly put before substantive nouns, viz. *a* (or *an* before a vowel or *h*) called the *indefinite article*, and *the*, called the *definite*.

A or *an* signifies as much as the adjective *one*, and is put for it; as *a man*, that is, *one man*. *The* is used pronominally, and signifies almost the same with *this* or *that*, and *these* or *those*.

NOTE 1. That proper names of men, women, towns, kingdoms, and appellatives, when used in a very general sense, have none of these articles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every man; *God abhors sin*, i. e. all sins; but proper names of rivers, ships, hills, &c. frequently have *the*; as, *the Thames*, *the Hudson*, *the Alps*.

NOTE 2. That the vocative has none of these articles, and the plural wants the indefinite.

NOTE 3. That when an adjective is joined with a substantive, the article is put before both; as *a good man*, *the good man*; and the definite is put before the adjective when the substantive is understood; as, *The just shall live by faith*, i. e. *the just man*.

III. The English hath *two numbers* as the Latin, and the plural is commonly made by putting an *s* to the singular; as *book*, *books*.

EXC. 1. Such as end in *ch*, *sh*, *es*, and *x*, which have *es* added to their singular; as *church-es*, *brush-es*, *witness-es*, *box-es*; where it is to be noticed, that such words have a syllable more in the plural than in the singular number; which likewise happens to all words ending in *ce*, *ge*, *se*, *ze*; as *faces*, *ages*, *houses*, *mazes*. The reason of this proceeds from the near approach these terminations have in their sound to an *s*, so that their plural could be distinguished from the singular, without the addition of another syllable. And, for the same reason, verbs of these terminations have a syllable added to them in their third person singular of the present tense.

EXC. 2. Words that end in *f*, or *fe*, have their plural in *ves*; as, *calf*, *calves*; *leaf*, *leaves*; *wife*, *wives*; but not always; for *hoof*, *roof*, *grief*, *mischief*, *dwarf*, *strife*, *muff*, &c. retain *f*: *Staff* has *staves*.

EXC. 3. Some have their plural in *en*: as *man*, *men*; *woman*, *women*; *child*, *children*; *chick*, *chicken*; *brother*, *brothers*, or *brethren*; (which last is seldom used but in sermons or in a barlesque sense.)

EXC. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *die, dice; mouse, mice; louse, lice; goose, geese; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; penny, pence; sow, sows, and swine; cow, cows, and kine.*

EXC. 5. Some are the same in both numbers; as, *sheep, hose, swine, chicken, pease, deer; fish and fishes, mile and miles, horse and horses.*

NOTE. That as nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the plural; as, *cherry, cherries.*

AN ENGLISH NOUN IS THUS DECLINED.

Singular.	Nom.	A. the King	Plural.	Nom.	The Kings
	Gen. of	King		Gen. of	Kings
	Dat. to (for)	King		Dat. to (for)	Kings
	Acc.	King		Acc.	Kings
	Voc. O	King		Voc. O	Kings
	Abl. with, from, in, by	King		Abl. with, from, in, by	Kings

Prima Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur prima declinatio?

D. Per genitivum et dativum singularem in æ diphthongo.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Quatuor; a, e, as, es; ut,

The First Declension.

M. How is the first declension known?

S. By the genitive and dative singular in æ diphthong.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. Four; a, e, as, es; as,

Penna, Penelope, Ænæus, Anchises.

Penna, a Pen, Fem.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.
Nom.	<i>penna, a pen</i>	Nom.	<i>pennæ, pens</i>	a, æ,
Gen.	<i>pennæ, of a pen</i>	Gen.	<i>pennarum, of pens</i>	æ, arum,
Dat.	<i>pennæ, to a pen</i>	Dat.	<i>pennis, to pens</i>	æ, is,
Acc.	<i>pennam, a pen</i>	Acc.	<i>pennas, pens</i>	am, as,
Voc.	<i>penna, O pen</i>	Voc.	<i>pennæ, O pens</i>	a, æ,
Abl.	<i>pennâ, with a pen</i>	Abl.	<i>pennis, with pens</i>	â: is.

* * After the same manner you may decline *littera*, a letter; *via*, a way; *galea*, a helmet; *tunica*, a coat; *toga*, a gown.

a is a Latin termination ; *e*, *as* and *es*, are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are feminine ; in *as* and *es* masculine.

RULE. *Filia*, a daughter ; *nata*, a daughter ; *dea*, a goddess ; *anima*, the soul ; with some others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their dat. and abl. plural, to distinguish them from masculines in *us* of the second declination.

¶ In declining *Greek nouns*, observe the following rules ;

1. Greek nouns in *as*, [and *a*] have sometimes their accusative [with the poets] in *an* ; as *Æneas*, *Æneum*, vel *Ænean* ; *Cæsa*, *Ossum*, vel *Ossan*.

2. Those in *es* have their accusative in *en*, and their vocative and ablative in *e* ; as,

<i>Nom.</i> Anchises	<i>Acc.</i> Anchisen
<i>Voc.</i> Anchise.	<i>Abl.</i> Anchise.

3. Nouns in *e* have their genitive in *es*, their accusative in *en*, their dative, vocative and ablative in *e* ; as,

<i>Nom.</i> Penelope	<i>Gen.</i> Penelopes
<i>Dat.</i> Penelope	<i>Acc.</i> Penelopen.
<i>Voc.</i> Penelope	
<i>Abl.</i> Penelope.	

[As to the dative of words in *e*, I have followed *Probus* and *Præcilian*, among the ancients ; *Lally*, *Alvarus*, *Vossius*, *Mesleures de Port Royal*, *Johnson*, &c. among the moderns. And though none of them cite any example, yet I remember to have observed three such datives, viz. *Cybele* in *Virg. Æn.* XI. 768 ; *Penelope* in *Martial, Epig.* XI. 8. 9 ; and *Epigone* in *Reinesii Syntag. Inscript. Class.* 14. Num. 85. But *Diomedes*, and *Despauter*, seem to be of opinion that these nouns have *æ* in their dative. The reason that moved the former is, because they thought it incongruous, that seeing nouns in *e* generally follow the Greek in all their other cases, they should follow the Latin in their dative only, especially since their ablative, which answers to the Greek dative, ends in *e*. As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if such nouns have *æ* in their dative, it must come from a nominative in *æ* ; of which there are some examples yet extant ; and then they may likewise have their accusative in *am*, as *Penelopam*, *Circam*, in *Plautus* ; *Lycambam* in *Terentianus Maurus*. Thus *Helena*, or *Helenes*, *Helenam*, or *Helenen*, are frequently to be met with in poets, who also turn such words as commonly end in *a* into *e* in the nominative and vocative, when the measure of their verse requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek

words in *es*, have sometimes their nominative and vocative in *a*, (whence comes their genitive and dative in *æ*) and if Mr. Johnson's citations are right, both *es* and *e* have sometimes their accusative in *es*.

Secunda Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur secunda declinato?

D. Per genitivum singularem in *i*, et dativum in *o*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; *ut*,

Gener, a son-in-law; *vir*, a man; *satur*, full; *dominus*, a lord; *regnum*, a kingdom; *synodus*, a synod; *Albion*, the island Albion or Great Britain.

The Second Declension.

M. How is the second declension known?

S. By the genitive singular in *i*, and dative in *o*.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. Seven; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; *as*,

Gener, a son-in-law. Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	Terminations.
<i>Nom.</i> gener	<i>Nom.</i> generi	<i>er, ir, us, i,</i> <i>i, orum,</i> <i>o, is,</i> <i>um, os,</i> <i>er, ir, e, i,</i> <i>o: is.</i>	
<i>Gen.</i> generi	<i>Gen.</i> generorum		
<i>Dat.</i> genero	<i>Dat.</i> generis		
<i>Acc.</i> generum	<i>Acc.</i> generos		
<i>Voc.</i> gener	<i>Voc.</i> generi		
<i>Abl.</i> genero	<i>Abl.</i> generis		

After the same manner you may decline *puer*, a boy; *socer* a father-in-law, *vir*, a man, &c. But *liber*, a book; *magister*, a master; *Alexander*, a man's name; and most other substantives in *er*, lose the *e* before *r*; thus, *sing. nom.* liber, *gen.* libri, *dat.* libro, *acc.* librum, *voc.* liber, *abl.* libro; *plur. nom.* libri, *gen.* librorum, &c.

Dominus, a lord, Masc.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Thus.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dominus	<i>Nom.</i> domini	Ventus, the wind.
<i>Gen.</i> domini	<i>Gen.</i> dominorum	Oculus, the eye.
<i>Dat.</i> domino	<i>Dat.</i> dominis	Fluvius, a river.
<i>Acc.</i> dominum	<i>Acc.</i> dominos	Puteus, a well.
<i>Voc.</i> domine	<i>Voc.</i> domini	Focus, a common fire.
<i>Abl.</i> domino	<i>Abl.</i> dominis	Rogus, a funeral pile

Regnum, a kingdom, Neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum	Nom. regna
Gen. regni	Gen. regnorum
Dat. regno	Dat. regnis
Acc. regnum	Acc. regna
Voc. regnum	Voc. regna
Abl. regno	Abl. regnis

Thus,
 Templum, a church.
 Ingenium, wit.
 Horreum, a barn.
 Canticum, a song.
 Jugum, a yoke.

REGULÆ.

I. Nominativus in *us* facit vocativum in *e*; ut, *ventus, vente.*

II. Propria nomina in *ius* perdunt *us* in vocativo; ut, *Georgius, Georgi.*

Filius hath also *fili*, and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the vocative; and in the plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis* than *Dei* and *Deis*.

RULES.

I. The nominative in *us* makes the vocative in *e*; as, *ventus, vente.*

II. Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Georgius, Georgi.*

The most common terminations of the second declension, are *er* and *us* of the masculine, and *um* of the neuter gender.

There is only one noun in *ir* of this declension, viz. *vir*, man, with its compounds, *Levir*, *Duumvir*, *Triumvir*, &c. and only one in *ur*, viz. *Satur*, full, (of old *Saturus*,) an adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their nominative. These, with other Greek nouns in *us* have sometimes their accusative in *on*.

[We have excluded the termination *eus* from this declension, as belonging more properly to the third; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos, Orphei, Orphea, Orpheu*; for when it is of the second declension, it is *e-us* of two syllables, and so falls under the termination *us*; *Orphe-us, Orphe-i*, (contracted *Orphei*, and *Orphi*) *Orphe-o, Orphe-um*, (or *Orphe-on*,) *Orphe-o*.]

Tertia declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur tertia declinatio?

D. Per genitivum singularem in *is*, et dativum in *i*.

The third declension.

M. How is the third declension known?

S. By the genitive singular in *is*, and dative in *i*.

M. Quot habet terminationes seu syllabas finales ?

D. Septuaginta et unam.

M. Quot habet literas finales ?

D. Undecim ; a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x ; ut,

M. How many terminations or final syllables hath it ?

S. Seventy and one.

M. How many final letters hath it ?

S. Eleven ; a, e, o, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x ; as,

Diadēma, a crown ; *sedile*, a seat ; *sermo*, a speech ; *lac*, milk ; *David*, a man's name ; *anima*, a living creature ; *pecten*, a comb ; *puter*, a father ; *rupes*, a rock ; *caput*, the head ; *rex*, a king.

Sermo, a speech, Masc.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations
Nom.	sermo	Nom.	sermones	
Gen.	sermonis	Gen.	sermonum	
Dat.	sermoni	Dat.	sermonibus	
Acc.	sermonem	Acc.	sermones	
Voc.	sermo	Voc.	sermones	
Abl.	sermone.	Abl.	sermonibus.	

Sedile, a seat, Neut.

Sing. Plur.

Nom. sedile Nom. sedilia

Gen. sedilis Gen. sedilium

Dat. sedili Dat. sedilibus

Acc. sedile Acc. sedilia

Voc. sedile Voc. sedilia

Abl. sedili Abl. sedilibus

As *sermo*, so most substantives of this declension in a, o, c, d, n, t, x, er, or, ur, as, os, us ; (except their acc. and voc. when they are neuters, or when they want the plural number.) Also (when they have more syllables in their gen. than nom.) all words, in es, and most of those in is.

Of the final letters of the third declension, six are peculiar to it, *n, c, d, l, t, x*, the other five are common to other declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s*.

The copious final letters, are, *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final syllables, are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex*.

All nouns in *a* of this declension are originally Greek, and have always an *m* before it. There are only two words in *c* ; *lac*, milk ; and *halec*, a herring. Words in *d* are proper names of men, and very rare. There are only three words in *t*, viz. *caput*, the head ; *sinciput*, the forehead ; *occiput*, the hindhead.

1. The terminations *er, or, os, o, n,*
 2. The terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is,*
ys, ous, x, and *s* after a consonant,
 3. The terminations *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut,*
- } are { { Masculinæ
Feminiæ
Neutrum
- But from these there are many exceptions.

NOTE 1. That for the most part the genitive hath a syllable more than the nominative; and where it is otherwise, they generally end in *e, es, or is.*

NOTE 2. That whatever letter or syllable comes before *is* in the gen. must run through the other cases (except the acc. and voc. sing. of neuters) as *thema, -ātis, -ati, -ate,* a theme; *sanguis, guinis,* blood; *iter, -tineris,* a journey; *carmen, -mīnis,* a verse; *judex, -dīcis,* a judge.

REGULÆ.

1. Nomina in *e,* et neutra in *al* et *ar,* habent *i* in ablativo.

2. Quæ habent *e* tantum, in ablativo, faciunt genitivum pluralem in *um.*

3. Quæ habent *i* tantum, vel *e* et *i* simul, faciunt *ium.*

4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in ablativo singulari, habent *a* in nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo plurali.

5. At quæ habent *i* in ablativo, faciunt *ia.*

RULES.

1. Nouns in *e,* and neuters in *al* and *ar,* have *i* in the ablativo.

2. Those which have *e* only in the ablativo, make their genitive plural in *um.*

3. Those which have *i* only or *e* and *i* together, make *ium.*

4. Neuters which have *e* in their ablativo singular, have *a* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

5. But those which have *i* in the ablativo, make *ia.*

I. EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Some nouns in *is* have *im* in the accusative; as, *vis, vim,* strength; *tussis,* the cough; *sitis,* thirst; *buris,* the beam of a plough; *ravis,* hoarseress; *amussis,* a mason's rule. To which add names of rivers in *is*; as, *Tybris, Thamësis,* which the poets sometimes make in *in.*

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im*; as, *navis,* a ship; *poppis,* the stern; *securis,* an axe; *clavis,* a key; *febris,* a fever; *pelvis,* a basin; *restis,* a rope; *turris,* a tower; *navem* vel *navim,* &c

2. EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as *vis, vin, vi, &c.* Those that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i*; as *navis, navem* vel *navim, nave* vel *navi*.

2. *Canalis, vectis, bipennis*, have *i*; *avis, amnis, ignis, unguis, rus*, and *imber*, with some others have *e* or *i*, but most commonly *e*.

3. These neuters in *ar*, have *e*; *far, jubar, nectar*, and *hepar*; *sal* also has *salē*.

3. EXCEPTIONS IN THE GENITIVE PLURAL.

1. Nouns of one syllable in *as, is*, and *s* with a consonant before it, have *ium*; as, *as, castum*; *lis, litium*; *urbs, urbium*.

2. Also nouns in *es*, and *is*, not increasing in their genitive; as, *vallis, vallium*; *rupes, rupium*. Except *panis, canis, vates*, and *vulcris*.

3. To which add *caro, cor, cos, dos, mus, nix, nox, linter, sal, os, ossis*.

NOTE. That when the genitive plural ends in *ium*, the accusative frequently, instead of *es*, has *eis*, or *is*; as *omneis, parteis*, or *munis, partis*, for *omnes, partes*

OF GREEK NOUNS.

I. Greek nouns have sometimes their genitive in *os*. And these are, 1. Such as increase their genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas Arcadīs* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Brisēis, -eidis*, vel *-eidos*, a woman's name. 2. Such as increase in *os* pure, i. e. with a vowel before it, as *hærēsis, -eos*, vel *-ios*, an heresy. 3. To these add *sphingos, strymonos*, and *panos*.

NOTE. That *is* is more frequent, except in the second kind, and patronymics of the first.

II. 1. Greek words which increase their genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (i. e. with a consonant before it) have frequently their accusative singular in *a*, and plural in *as*; as, *lampas, lampadis, lampada, lampadas*; also *Minos, Minōis, Minou*; *Tros, Trōis, Troa, Troas*; *heros, herōis, heroa, heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whose genitive ends in *os*, pure, have their accusative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as *Hæresis -eos, hæresim* or *-in*; *chelys, -lyos*, a lute; *chelym* or *-lyn*. Of words in *is*, which have their genitive in *dis* or *dos*, masculines have their accusative for the most part in *im* or *in*, seldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of: as *Paris, Parim*, vel *Parin*, vel

Paridem: Feminines have most commonly *dem* or *da*, and seldom *in* or *in*; as *Briseis*, *Briseidem* vel *Brianida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their genitive, and *o* in their other cases; as *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin form, *Didonis*, *Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their vocative; as *Culchas*, *Achilles*, *Paris*, *Tiphys*, *Orpheus*; *Calcha*, *Achille*, *Pari*, *Tiphy*, *Orpheu*.

V. Greek nouns have *um*, (and sometimes *on* in their genitive plural; as *Epigrammaton*, *Hæreseon*,) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek nouns in *ma* have most frequently *is* in their dative and ablative plural; as *Poëma*, *Poëmatis*, because of old they said *Poëmatum*, *ti*. *Bos* has *Boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.

The Fourth Declension.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur quarta declinatio?

M. How is the fourth declension known?

D. Per genitivum singularem in *us*, & dativum in *ui*.

S. By the genitive singular in *us*, and the dative in *ui*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

M. How many terminations hath it?

D. Duas; *us* & *u*; *ut*,

S. Two; *us* and *u*; *as*,

Fructus, fruit; *cornu*, a horn.

Fructus, fruit, Masculine.

Singular.		Plural.	Terminations.	
Nom.	fructus	Nom. fructus	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> .
Gen.	fructus	Gen. fructuum	<i>us</i> ,	<i>uum</i>
Dat.	fructui	Dat. fructibus	<i>ui</i> ,	<i>ibus</i> .
Acc.	fructum	Acc. fructus	<i>um</i> ,	<i>us</i> .
Voc.	fructus	Voc. fructus	<i>us</i> ,	<i>us</i> .
Abl.	fructu	Abl. fructibus.	<i>u</i> :	<i>ibus</i>

Cornu, a horn, Neut.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	cornu	Nom. cornua	As fructus, so vultus, the countenance; manus, the hand, fem. casus, a fall or chance.
Gen.	cornu	Gen. cornuum	
Dat.	cornu	Dat. cornibus	
Acc.	cornu	Acc. cornua	As cornu, so genu, the knee.
Voc.	cornu	Voc. cornua	
Abl.	cornu	Abl. cornibus.	veru. a spit, tonitru, thunder

Nouns in *us* of this declension are generally masculine, and those in *a* all neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

RULE. Some nouns have *ūbus* in their dative and ablative plural, viz. *arcus*, a bow; *artus*, a joint; *lacus*, a lake; *acus*, a needle; *portus*, a port or harbour; *partus*, a birth; *tribus*, a tribe; *veru*, a spit

NOTE. That of old, nouns of this declension belonged to the third, and were declined as *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuam*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuam*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative sing. and genitive plural. There are some examples of the genitive in *uis* yet extant; as, on the contrary, there are several of the dative in *u*.

The blessed name *JESUS* is thus declined.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i> Jēsus	<i>Acc.</i> Jesum	
<i>Gen.</i> Jesu	<i>Voc.</i> Jesu	<i>Plural wanting.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Jesu	<i>Abl.</i> Jesu.	

Domus, a house; feminine, is thus declined.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Nom.</i> domus	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Nom.</i> domus
	<i>Gen.</i> domus, <i>vel</i> -mi		<i>Gen.</i> domorum, <i>vel</i> -uum
	<i>Dat.</i> domui, <i>vel</i> -mo		<i>Dat.</i> domibus
	<i>Acc.</i> domum		<i>Acc.</i> domos, <i>vel</i> -us
	<i>Voc.</i> domus		<i>Voc.</i> domus
	<i>Abl.</i> domo.		<i>Abl.</i> domibus.

NOTE. That the genitive *domi* is only used when it signifies at home; *domo*, the dative is found in *Horace*, *Epist.* L. 10. 13.

Quinta declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur quinta declinatio?

D. Per genitivum et dativum singularem in *ei*.

M. Quot habet terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe *es*; ut,

Res, a thing; Fem.

The fifth declension.

M. How is the fifth declension known?

S. By the genitive and dative singular in *ei*.

M. How many terminations hath it?

S. One, namely, *es*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Terminations.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> res,	<i>Nom.</i> res,	<i>es, es,</i>
<i>Gen.</i> rei,	<i>Gen.</i> rerum,	<i>ei, erum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> rei,	<i>Dat.</i> rebus;	<i>ei, ebus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> rem,	<i>Acc.</i> res,	<i>em, es,</i>
<i>Voc.</i> res,	<i>Voc.</i> res,	<i>es, es,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> re;	<i>Abl.</i> rebus.	<i>e; ebus</i>

Nouns of the fifth declension are not above fifty; and are all feminine, except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. and *meridies*, the mid-day or noon, masc.

All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except three; *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing.

And all nouns in *ies*, are of the fifth, except these four; *abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *acies*, rest, which are of the third.

Most nouns of this declension want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural; and many of them want the plural altogether.

GENERAL REMARKS ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

1. The genitive plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by poets; as, *cœlicolûm*, *deûm*, *mensûm*, *currâm*; for *cœlicolarum*, *deorum*, *mensium*, *curruum*.

2. When the genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by poets; as, *tugûri* for *tugurii*. We read also, *aulâi* for *aulæ* in the first; and *fide* for *fidei* in the fifth; and so of other like words.

Declinatio adjectivorum.

Adjectiva sunt vel primæ et secundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.

Omnia adjectiva habentia tres terminationes (præter* undecim) sunt primæ et secundæ: at quæ unam vel duas terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ

Adjectiva primæ et secundæ habent masculinum in *us* † vel *er*; fœmininum semper in *a*; neutrum semper in *um*; ut,

The declension of adjectives.

Adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

All adjectives having three terminations (except* eleven) are of the first and second; but those which have one or two terminations are of the third.

Adjectives of the first and second have their masculine in *us*† or *er*; their feminine always in *a*; and their neuter always in *um*, as;

* Viz. *acer*, *alacer*, *celer*, *cœleber*, *soluber*, *volucer*, *campester*, *equester*, *pedester*, *paluster*, *silvester*; which are of the third, and have their masc. in *er*, or *is*, their feminine in *is*, and neut. in *e*

† For *satur*, full; was of old *saturus*.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good; tener, tenera, tenerum, tender

Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom. bôn-us,	-a,	-um,	Nom. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen. bôn-i,	-æ,	-i,	Gen. bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	Dat. bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc. bôn-um,	-am,	-um,	Acc. bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc. bon-e,	-a,	-um,	Voc. bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl. bôn-b,	-a,	-o :	Abl. bon-is,	-is,	-is.

Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. tēn-er,	-ēra,	-ērūm,	N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-eræ,	-eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero :	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives are declined as three substantives of the same terminations and declensions: as in the examples above, *bonus*, like *dominus*; *tener*, like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera*, like *pena*; *bonum* and *tenerum*, like *regnum*. Therefore the ancients, as is clear from *Varro*, lib. 3. *de Anal.* declined every gender separately; and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: and perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this method at first, especially if the boy is of a slow capacity.

Of adjectives in *er*, some retain the *e*, as *tener*. So *miser*, *-era*, *-erum*, wretched; *liber*, *-era*, *-erum*; free; and all compounds in *ger*, and *fer*, others lose it, as, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*, fair; *niger*, *-gra*, *-grum*, black.

These following adjectives, *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *solus*, alone; *ullus*, any; *nullus*, none; *alius*, another of many; *alter*, another, or one of two; *neuter*, neither; *uter*, whether with its compounds; *uterque*, both; *uterlibet*, *utervis*, which of the two you please; *alteruter*, the one or the other; have their genitives singular in *ius*, and dative in *i*.

Adjectiva Tertiæ Declinationis.

1. *Unius terminationis.*

Adjectives of the Third Declension.

1. Of one termination.

Felix, happy.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-ic.	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice, vel -ici, &c.			A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. *Duarum terminationum.* | 2. Of two terminations.
Mitis, mite, meek.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia
A. miti,	miti,	miti:	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus

Mitior, mitius, meeker.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	N. miti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
G. miti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris,	G. miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	D. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	A. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	V. miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore, vel -ori, &c.			A. miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. *Trium terminationum.* | 3. Of three terminations.
Acer, vel acris, acris, acre, sharp.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. a-cer, vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	N. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	G. a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	D. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	A. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer, vel -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	V. a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri:	A. a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

REGULÆ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ declinationis habent e vel i in ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in e, blativus habet i tantum.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have e or i in the ablative singular.

2. But if the neuter be in e, the ablative has i only.

3. Genitivus plurales desinit in *ium*; et neutrum nominativi, accusativi, et vocativi, in *ia*.

4. Excipe comparativa, quæ *um* et *a* postulant.

3. The genitive plural ends in *ium*; and the neuter of the nominative, accusative and vocative in *ia*.

4. Except comparatives, which require *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Dives, hospes, sospes, superstes, juvenis, senex, and pauper*, have *e* in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

2. *Compos, impos, consors, inops, vigil, supplex, uber, degener, and puber*; also compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes, and corpor*; as *princeps, artifex, bipes, tricorpor*, have *um* not *ium*.

NOTE. That all these have seldom the neuter singular, and never almost the neuter plural in the nom. and acc. To which add *memor*, which has *memori* and *memorum*, and *locuples*, which has *locupletium*; also, *deses, reses, he'es, perpes, præpes, teres, concolor, versicolor*; which being hardly to be met with in the genitive plural, it is a doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium*, though I incline most to the former.

3. *Par* has *pãri, vetus, vetëra, and veterum*; *plus*, (which hath only the neut. in the sing.) has *plure*, and *plures*, (or *pluria*) *plurium*.

NOTE 1. That comparatives, and adjectives, in *us*, have more frequently *e* than *i*, and participles in the ablatives called *absolute*; have generally *e*; as, *carolo regnante*, not *regnanti*.

NOTE 2. That adjectives joined with substantives neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i*, as *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

NOTE 3. That adjectives when they are put substantively, have oft-times *e*; as, *affinis, familiaris, rivãlis, sodãlis, &c.* So *par*, a match; as, *Cum pare quæque suo cõeunt*. Ovid.

OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. The *ordinal* and *multiplicative* numbers (see chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *distributive* wants the singular, as also doth the *cardinal*, except *unus*, which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the plural, when joined with a substantive that wants the sing.; as, *unæ literæ*, one letter; *una mania*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered complexly, as

making one compound; as, *uni sex dies*, i. e. one space of six days; *una vestimenta*, i. e. one suit of apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this manner :

<i>Plural.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>duo,</i>	<i>duæ,</i>	<i>duo,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>duorum,</i>	<i>duarum,</i>	<i>duorum,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trium,</i>	<i>trium,</i>	<i>trium,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>duobus,</i>	<i>duabus,</i>	<i>duobus,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tribus,</i>	<i>tribus,</i>	<i>tribus,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>duos v.-o,</i>	<i>duas,</i>	<i>duo,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>duo,</i>	<i>duæ,</i>	<i>duo,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tres,</i>	<i>tria,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>duobus,</i>	<i>duabus,</i>	<i>duobus.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tribus,</i>	<i>tribus,</i>	<i>tribus.</i>

Amb, *b* *th,* is declined as *duo*.

2. From *quatuor* to *centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *centum* to *mille*, they are declined thus: *ducenti,* *ducentæ,* *ducenta*; *ducentorum,* *ducentarum,* *ducentorum,* &c.

4. As to *mille*, Varro, and all the grammarians after him down to the last age, make it (when it is not before a gen. plur.) a substantive indeclinable in the sing. and in the plur. declined, *millia,* *millium,* *millibus*; but when it hath a substantive joined to it in any other case, they make it an adjective plural indeclinable. But Scioppius, and after him Gronovius, contend that *mille* is always an adjective plural; and under that termination of all cases and genders; but that it hath two neuters, *hec mille*, and *hec millia*; that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that where it seems to be a substantive governing a gen. *multitudo,* *numerus,* *manus,* *pecunia,* *pondus,* *spatium,* *corpus*, or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this sentiment; but now the weighty reasons adduced by the most accurate Perizonius incline me rather to follow the ancient grammarians.

[After the declension of substantives and adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the learner with some examples of a substantive and adjective declined together; which will both make him more ready in the declensions, and render the dependence of the adjective upon the substantive more familiar to him. Let the examples at first be of the same terminations and declensions; as, *dominus justus*, a just lord; *penna bona*, a good pen; *ingenium eximium*, an excellent wit; afterwards let them be different in one or both; as, *puer probus*, a good boy; *lectio facilis*, an easy lesson; *poeta optimus*, an excellent poet; *fructus dulcis*, sweet fruit; *dies faustus*, a happy day, &c. And if the boy has as yet been taught writing, let him write them either in the school or at home, to be revised by the master next day.]

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

These (for we cannot here make a full enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following scheme :

IRREGULAR NOUNS are,	1. DEFECTIVE.	1. Substantives.	Wanting.	1. Number.	{ Sing. as, <i>Libéri, Mīna, Arma.</i> Plur. as, <i>Ter, Humus, JExum.</i>
		2. Adjectives.	Wanting.	2. Cases.	{ Nom. and Voc. } { <i>Ditionis</i> Gen. } { <i>Chaos</i> Dat. } { <i>Plus.</i> Voc. } { <i>Ego.</i>
				or having only	Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as <i>Mat.</i> Threc; as, <i>Dica, dicam, dicas.</i> Two; as, <i>Suppetias, Suppetias.</i> One; as, <i>Dicis, Inficias, Noctis.</i>
				1. Gender,	{ Masc. as, <i>Cætera, cæterum.</i> Fem. as, <i>Quisquis, quicquid.</i> Neut. as, <i>Compos.</i> Mas. and Fem. as, <i>Plus.</i> Mas. and Neut. as, <i>Sicelis.</i> Fem. and Neut. as, <i>Tros.</i>
				2. Number.	{ Sing. as, <i>Centum.</i> Plur. as <i>Unusquisque.</i>
				3. Case,	{ Voc. as, <i>Nullus.</i> Dat. and Abl. as, <i>Tantundem.</i>
				or having the Vocative only; as, <i>Macte, Macti.</i>	
	2. VARIABLE.	1. Too much.	In Gender having Sing.	{ Masc. } Masc. } Fem. } Neut. } Neut. } Neut. }	{ Neut. as, <i>Manillus, Manala.</i> Masc. and Neut. as, <i>Locus, et, and on.</i> Neut. as, <i>Carbasus, Carbasa.</i> Masc. as, <i>Cælum, cæli.</i> Fem. as, <i>Epulum, epulæ.</i> Masc. et Neut. as, <i>Frœnum, -ri, & -um</i>
			In Declension, being of the		{ 2. and 1. as, <i>Delicium, delicia.</i> 2. and 4. as, <i>Laurus, -ri, and rûs.</i> 3. and 2. as, <i>Vas, -sis; -sa, -sorum.</i>
			2. Too little, as, <i>Indeclinables.</i>		{ altogether; as, <i>Fas.</i> in the Sing. as, <i>Cornu.</i>
	3. REDUNDANT.	In Termination,			{ only; as, <i>Helena, Helene.</i> and Gender; as, <i>Tigris, Tigra.</i> and Decl. as, <i>Materia, materies.</i>
		In Gender,			{ Gen. and Decl. as, <i>Æther, æthra.</i> only; as, <i>hic et hoc Vulgus.</i>
		In Declension.			{ only; as, <i>Fames, famis, of the 3d;</i> Abl. <i>fame,</i> of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets.

B

NOTE 1. That the *defective* nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

NOTE 2. That those which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *defective*; and those which *vary too much*, under the *redundant*, E. G. *cæli, cælorum*, comes not from *cælum*, but from *cælus*; and *vasa, vasorum*, not from *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasi*: but custom, which alone gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

DE COMPARATIONE.

M. Quot sunt gradus comparationis?

D. Tres; *positivus, comparativus, et superlativus*.

M. Quotæ declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. *Positivus* est adjectivum primæ et secundæ declinationis, vel tertiæ tantum; *comparativus* est semper tertiæ; *superlativus* semper primæ et secundæ.

M. Unde formatur comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo casu positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino et fœminino syllabam *or*, et *us* pro neutro; ut,

Doctus, learned; Gen. *docti, doctior, et doctius*, more learned.
Mitis, meek; Dat. *miti, mitior, et mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur superlativus?

D. 1. Si *positivus* desinat in *er*, *superlativus* formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

Pulcher, fair; *pulcherrimus*, most fair; *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, most poor.

OF COMPARISON.

M. How many degrees of comparison are there?

S. Three; the positive, comparative, and superlative.

M. Of what declension are these degrees?

S. The positive is an adjective of the first and second declension, or third only; the comparative is always of the third; the superlative always of the first and second.

M. Whence is the comparative degree formed?

S. From the next case of the positive in *i*, by adding for the masculine and feminine the syllable *or*, and *us* for the neuter; as,

M. Whence is the superlative formed?

S. 1. If the positive ends in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as,

2. Si positivus non desinat in *er*, superlativus formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ssimus*; ut,

Gen. *docti*, *doctissimus*, most learned : Dat. *miti*, *mitissimus*, most meek.

2. If the positive ends not in *er*, the superlative is formed from the next case in *i*, by adding *ssimus*; as,

By grammatical comparison we understand three adjective nouns of which the two last are formed from the first, and import comparison with it, that is, heightening or lessening of its signification.

Consequently those adjectives only which are capable of having their signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The positive signifies the quality of a thing simply and absolutely; as, *durus*, hard; *parvus*, little.

The comparative heightens or lessens that quality; as, *durior*, harder; *minor*, less.

The superlative heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low degree; as, *durissimus*, hardest, or most hard; *minimus*, very little, or least.

The positive hath various terminations; the comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the superlative always in *mus*, *ma*, *mum*.

[The positive, properly speaking, is no degree of comparison, for it does not compare things together: however, it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.

The sign of the comparative in our language is the syllable *er* added to an adjective, or the word *more* put before it.

The sign of the superlative is the syllable *est* added to an adjective, or the words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE. That when the positive is a long word, or would otherwise sound harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the comparative by the word *more*, and the superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And for the like reason, the Latin comparative is sometimes made by *magis*, and the superlative by *valde* or *maxime*, put before the positive. And these are particularly used, when the positive ends in *us* with a vowel before it; as, *pius*, godly; *arduus*, high; *idoneus*, fit; though not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus:	Good,	better,	best,
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus:	Evil,	worse,	worst,
Magnus,	major,	maximus:	Great,	greater,	greatest,
Parvus,	minor,	minimus:	Little,	less,	least

Multus, plurimus; multa, plurima; multum, plus, plurimum: much, more, most.

2. **Facilis, easy; humilis, low; similis, like; make their superlative by changing *is* into *imus*; thus *facillimus, humillimus, simillimus.***

3. **Exter, outward; citer, hither; superus, above; inferus, below; posterus, behind, have regular comparatives; but their superlatives are *extrèmus, (or extimus,)* uttermost, *citimus, hithèrmost; suprèmus, (or summus,)* uppermost, highest, last; *infimius (or imus,)* lowest, *postrèmus (or postimius,)* latest, or last.**

4. Compounds in *dicus, loquus, ficus, and volus, have entior, and entissimus; as, maledicus, one that railèth; magniloquus, one that boasteth; beneficus, benificent; malevolus, malevolent. But these seem rather to come from participles or nouns in ens. Besides, the comparatives and superlatives of adjectives derived from loquor and facio are very rare; and Terence has mirificissimus, and Plautus has mendaciloquus.*

5. **Prior, former, has primus, first; ulterior, farther, ultimus, farthest or last; propior, nearer, proximus, nearest or next; ocior, swifter, ocissimus, swiftest; their positives being out of use, or quite wanting. Proximus has also another comparative formed from it, viz. proximior.**

6. There are also a great many other adjectives capable of having their signification increased, which yet want one or more of these degrees of comparison; as *albus, white, without comparative and superlative; ingens, great, ingentior, greater, without the superlative; sacer, holy, sacerrimus, most holy, without the comparative; anterior, former, without positive and superlative.*

¶ These three degrees of comparison being nothing else but three distinct adjectives, may be declined either severally, each by itself, or jointly together; respect still being had to their declensions. But the first way is much easier, and will answer all the purposes of comparison as well as the other.

CAP. II.

DE PRONOMINE.

M. Quot sunt pronomina simplicia?

D. Octodecim; Ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui;

CHAP. II.

OF PRONOUNS.

M. How many* simple pronouns are there?

S. Eighteen; Ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui;

* See Chap. IX.

meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, et cujas.

¶ Ex his, tria sunt substantiva, *ego, tu, sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt adjectiva.

meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, and cujas.

¶ Of these, three are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Singular.

Nom. *ego, I,*
Gen. *mei, of me,*
Dat. *mihī, to me,*
Acc. *me, me,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *me, with me :*

Plural.

Nom. *nos, we,*
Gen. *nostrum vel nostri, of us,*
Dat. *nobis, to us,*
Acc. *nos, us,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *nobis, with us.*

Tu, Thou, or You.

Singular.

Nom. *tu, thou,*
Gen. *tui, of thee,*
Dat. *tibi, to thee,*
Acc. *te, thee,*
Voc. *tu, O thou,*
Abl. *te, with thee :*

Plural.

Nom. *vos, ye, you,*
Gen. *vestrum, vel vestri, of you,*
Dat. *vobis, to you,*
Acc. *vos, you,*
Voc. *vos, O ye, you,*
Abl. *vobis, with you.*

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Singular.

Nom. _____
Gen. *sui, of himself, &c.*
Dat. *sibi, to himself,*
Acc. *se, himself,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *se, with himself :*

Plural.

Nom. _____
Gen. *sui, of themselves,*
Dat. *sibi, to themselves,*
Acc. *se, themselves,*
Voc. _____
Abl. *se, with themselves.*

A Pronoun is an irregular kind of noun: Or, it is a part of speech, which has respect to, and supplies the place of a noun; as, instead of your name, I say, *tu, thou or you*; instead of *Jacobus fecit*, James did it, I say, *ille fecit*, he did it, viz. James.

NOTE 1. That the Dative *mihī* is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

NOTE 2. That of old the Genitive plural of *ego* was *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu, vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, (of which there are several examples in Plautus and Terence) which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

NOTE 3. That we use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after numerals, partitives, comparatives, and superlatives; and *nostrī* and *vestrī* after other nouns and verbs; though there want not some examples of these last with *nostrum* and *vestrum*, even in Cicero himself, as Vossius shows.

Ille, illa, illud; Hc, she, that or it.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>illius,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illorum,</i>	<i>illarum,</i>	<i>illorum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum,</i>	<i>illam,</i>	<i>illud,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illos,</i>	<i>illas,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ille,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illud,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>illi,</i>	<i>illæ,</i>	<i>illa,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illo,</i>	<i>illa,</i>	<i>illo:</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis,</i>	<i>illis.</i>

Ipsē, ipsa, ipsum, he himself, she herself, it itself; and iste, ista, istud, he, she, that; are declined as ille; save only that ipse hath ipsum in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. sing. neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc; This.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hi,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hujus,</i>	<i>hujus,</i>	<i>hujus,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>horum,</i>	<i>harum,</i>	<i>horum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hos,</i>	<i>has,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>hic,</i>	<i>hæt,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>hi,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>hac,</i>	<i>hoc:</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his.</i>

Is, ea, id; He, she, it or that.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ii,</i>	<i>eæ,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ejus,</i>	<i>ejus,</i>	<i>ejus,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eorum,</i>	<i>earum,</i>	<i>eorum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>ei,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>iis vel eis,</i>	<i>&c.</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum,</i>	<i>eam,</i>	<i>id,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eos,</i>	<i>eas,</i>	<i>ea,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—		<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eo,</i>	<i>ea,</i>	<i>eo:</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>iis vel eis,</i>	<i>&c.</i>	

Quis, quæ, quod vel quid? Who, which, what?

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quod v. quid,</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>qui,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cujus,</i>	<i>cujus,</i>	<i>cujus,</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quorum,</i>	<i>quarum,</i>	<i>quorum,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>cui,</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>queis, v. quibus,</i>	<i>&c.</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quod v. quid</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quos,</i>	<i>quas,</i>	<i>quæ,</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quo,</i>	<i>qua,</i>	<i>quo:</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>queis, v. quibus,</i>	<i>&c.</i>	

Qui, quæ, quod ; *Who, which, that.**Singular.**Plural.*

<i>Nom.</i> qui,	quæ,	quod,	<i>Nom.</i> qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>Gen.</i> cuius,	cujus,	cujus,	<i>Gen.</i> quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>Dat.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>Dat.</i> queis <i>vel</i>	quibus,	&c.
<i>Acc.</i> quem,	quam,	quod,	<i>Acc.</i> quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—	<i>Voc.</i> —	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> quo,	qua,	quo :	<i>Abl.</i> queis <i>vel</i>	quibus,	&c.

Meus, my or mine ; *tuus*, thy or thine ; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own ; are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um : and *noster*, our or ours ; *vester*, your or yours ; like *pulcher*, -*chra* -*chrum*, of the first and second declension. But *tuus*, *suus*, and *vester* want the vocative ; *noster* and *meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the masc. singular.

Nostras, of our country ; *vestras*, of your country ; *cujas*, of what or which country ; are declined like *felix*, of the third declension, Gen. *nostratis*, Dat. *nostrati*.

NOTE 1. That all nouns and pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the vocative. In consequence of which rule, many nouns, as, *nullus*, *nemo*, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quot*, &c. and several pronouns, as, *ego*, *sui*, *quis*, &c. want the vocative ; but not so many, either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which reason, we have given vocatives to *ille*, *ipse*, *hic*, and *idem*, therein following the judgment of the great Vossius, Messieurs de Port Royal, and Johnson, which they support by the following authorities :

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, et hæc mihi terra precanti. *Virg. Æn.* 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna vale. *Tibul. lib.* 1. *El.* 4.

O nox illa, quæ penè æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. *Cic. pro Flac.*

Ipe meas æther accipe summe preces. *Ovid in Ibin.*

And the vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid. *Met.* 15.

quique fuisti
Hippolytus, dixit, nunc *idem* Virbius esto.

Though all authors before them will only allow four pronouns, viz. *tu*, *meus*, *noster*, and *nostras*, to have the vocative.

NOTE 2. That *qui* is sometimes used for *quis* ; as, *Cic. qui tantus fuit labor ? Ter. qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris ?*

NOTE 3. That *quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a substantive in

the same case; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, *quiddam*, &c. either have no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive: whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned substantives. But that *quid*, as well as *quod*, is originally an adjective, its signification plainly shows; otherwise we shall make *multum*, *plus*, *tantum*, *quantum*, &c. also substantives, when they govern the genitive; which yet most grammarians agree to be adjectives, having the common word *negotium* understood.

NOTE 4. That *qui* the relative hath oftentimes *qui* in the ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all genders and numbers, as Mr. Johnson evinces by a great many examples out of Plautus and Terence; to which he might have added one out of C. Nepos, III. 3.

NOTE 5. That *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are declined like gentile or national nouns in *as* of the third declension, in imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidenas*, *Privernas*, a man, woman, or thing, of or belonging to the towns of Arpinum, Fidenæ, or Privernum, and may have the neuter as well as these: for as Cic. has *Iter Arpinas*, and Liv. *Bellum Privernas*; so Colum. has *Arbustum nostras*, and Cic. *Nostratia verba*; contrary to what Linacer teaches.

[I pass over taking notice, that in old authors, especially Plautus, we find *quis* and *quisquis* sometimes of the feminine gender; *mis* and *tis*, for *mei* and *tui*; *hisce* for *hi*; *hibu.*, *ibus*, for *his*, *iis*; *illæ*, *ipsæ*, *istæ*, *quæ*, in the genitive or dative sing. fem.; *em* for *eum*; *istes* for *istos*; *quouis*, *quoi*, for *cujos*, *cui* because they are extraordinary.]

OF COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

1. Some are compounded of *quis* and *qui*, with some other word or syllable. In these *quis* is sometimes the first and sometimes the last part of the word compounded; but *qui* is always the first.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put first, are *quisnam*, who? *quisquam*, *quisquam*, any one: *quisque*, every one; *quisquis*, whoever: which are thus declined:

			Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam	vel quidnam:	cujusnam,	cuinam.
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam	vel quidpiam:	cujuspiam,	cuipiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam	vel quidquam:	cujusquam,	cuiquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque	vel quidque:	cujusque,	cuique.
Quisquis,	_____	quidquid	vel quicquid.	cujuscujus,	cucui.

And so forth in their other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has no feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Acc. *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when it is put last, are *aliquis* some; *ecquis*, who? To which some add *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined;

<i>Nominative.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>
<i>Alquis</i> ,	<i>aliqua</i> , <i>aliquid vel aliquid</i> :	<i>alicujus</i> ,	<i>alicui</i> .
<i>Ecquis</i> ,	<i>ecqua vel ecquæ</i> , <i>ecquod vel ecquid</i> :	<i>eccujus</i> ,	<i>eccui</i> ,
<i>Si quis</i> ,	<i>si qua</i> , <i>si quod vel si quid</i> :	<i>si cujus</i> ,	<i>si cui</i> .
<i>Ne quis</i> ,	<i>ne qua</i> , <i>ne quod vel ne quid</i> :	<i>ne cujus</i> ,	<i>ne cui</i> .
<i>Num quis</i> ,	<i>num qua</i> , <i>num quod vel num quid</i> :	<i>num cujus</i> ,	<i>num cui</i> .

NOTE. That these, and only these, have *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and nominative and accusative plural neuter.

3. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; and are thus declined;

<i>Nominative.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>
<i>Quicumque</i> ,	<i>quæcumque</i> , <i>quodcumque</i> :	<i>cujuscumque</i> ,	<i>cuiicumque</i>
<i>Quidam</i> ,	<i>quædam</i> , <i>quoddam vel quiddam</i> :	<i>cujusdam</i> ,	<i>cuidam</i> .
<i>Quilibet</i> ,	<i>quælibet</i> , <i>quodlibet vel quilibet</i> :	<i>cujuslibet</i> ,	<i>cuiilibet</i> .
<i>Quivis</i> ,	<i>quævis</i> , <i>quodvis vel quivis</i> :	<i>cujusvis</i> ,	<i>cuivis</i> .

Some of these are twice compounded; as, *ecquisquam*, who? *unusquisque*, every one. The first is scarce declined beyond its nominative, and the second wants the plural.

NOTE 1. That all these compounds want the voc. except *quisque*, *aliquis*, *quilibet*, *unusquisque*, and perhaps some others. *Vid. Voss. p. 395.*

NOTE 2. That all these compounds have seldom or never *quis*, but *quibus*, in their dative and ablative plural.

NOTE 3. That *quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam*, in the accusative singular; and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the genitive plural; *n* being put instead of *m* for the better sound, as it is for the same reason in the cases of *idem*.

II. Some reckon among compound pronouns *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*, with *ipsi*; but in the best books they are generally read

separately; which seems necessary, because of *te ipse* and *se ipse*, where the two words are of different cases.

III. *Is* is compounded with the syllable *dem*, and contracted into *idem*, the same; which is thus declined,

Singular.			Plural.				
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>Idem</i> ,	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eēdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eiusdem</i> ,	<i>eiusdem</i> ,	<i>eiusdem</i> ,	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>īīdem</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>Idem</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eisdem</i> ,	<i>eisdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>idem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>Idem</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eēdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> :	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>vel</i>	<i>īīdem</i> ,
							<i>&c.</i>

IV. Most of the other compound pronouns are only to be found in certain cases and genders; as,

1. Of *iste* and *hic* is compounded, *Nom. isthic, isthæc, isthoc* vel *isthuc*. *Acc. isthunc, isthanc, isthoc* vel *isthuc*. *Abl. isthoc, isthac, isthoc*. *Nom.* and *Acc.* plural neuter *isthæc*.

2. Of *ecce* and *is* is compounded, *eccum, eccam*; plural *eccos, eccas*; and from *ecce* and *ille*, *ellum, ellam*; *ellos, ellas*, in the Accusatives.

3. Of *modus*, and *is*, *hic*, *iste*, and *quis*, are compounded these Genitives, *eiusmodi, huiusmodi, istiusmodi, cuiusmodi*, and sometimes with the syllable *ce* put in the middle, *eiuscemodi, huiuscemodi, &c.*

4. Of *cum* and these Ablatives, *me, te, se, nobis, vobis, quī* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quicum* or *quocum*, and *quibuscum*.

5. To these add some pronouns compounded with these syllabical adjections, *met, te, se, pte, cine*, to make their signification more pointed and emphatical, as, *egōmet, tute, huiusce, meapte, hiccine*.

REMARKS ON ENGLISH PRONOUNS

1. In the Nominative, or *foregoing state* (as the English grammarians call it) we use *I, thou, he, she, we, ye, they*, and *who*; but in the other cases (which they name the *following state*) we use *me, thee, him, her, us, you, them*, and *whom*.

2. When we speak of a *person*, we use *who* and *whom*, whether we ask a question or not; as, *who did it? the man who did it*. But if we speak of a *thing*, with a question, we use *what?* as, *what book is that?* Without a question we

use *which*; as, *the book which you gave me*; and then it is frequently understood; as, *the book you gave me*.

NOTE. That *what* is often used, even without a question, instead of *the thing which* or *that which*; as, *I know what you design*, i. e. *the thing which* or *that which* you design. As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a question; as, *give me the book; which book? which of the books?*

3. *This* makes in the plural *these*, and *that* makes *those*.

NOTE. That *that* is frequently used instead of *who*, *whom* or *which*: as, *the man that told you, the man that we saw, the book that I lent you*.

4. We use *my*, *thy*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*, when they are joined with substantives, or the word *own*: and *mine*, *thine*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, when the substantive is left out or understood; as, *my book, this book is mine, &c.*

NOTE. That with *own*, or a substantive beginning with a vowel, we sometimes use *mine* and *thine*; as, *my eye, or mine eye; thy own, or thine own*.

5. We often use *here*, *there*, *where*, compounded with these particles, *of*, *by*, *upon*, *about*, *in*, *with*, instead of *this*, *that*, *which*, and *what*, with these same particles; as, *hereof*, *hereby*, *hereupon*, *hereabouts*, *herein*, *herewith*; for, *of this*, *by this*, *upon this*, *about this place*, *in this*, *with this*, &c.

6. *Whose* and *its* are genitives, instead of, *of whom*, *of it*; and it is a fault to use *its* for *'tis* or *it is*, as some do.

CAP. III.

De Verbo.

M. Quomodo declinatur verbum?

D. Per voces, modos, tempora, numeros, et personas.

M. Quot sunt voces?

D. Duæ; *activa et passiva*.

M. Quot sunt modi?

D. Quatuor; *indicativus, subjunctivus, imperativus, et infinitivus*

CHAP. III.

Of Verb.

M. *How is a verb declined?*

S. *By voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.*

M. *How many voices are there?*

S. *Two; the active and passive.*

M. *How many moods are there?*

S. *Four; indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive.*

M. Quot sunt numeri ?	M. How many numbers are there ?
D. Duo ; <i>singularis et pluralis</i> .	S. Two ; singular and plural.
M. Quot sunt tempora ?	M. How many tenses are there ?
D. Quinque ; <i>præsens, præteritum-imperfectum, præteritum-perfectum, præteritum-plus-quamperfectum et futurum</i> .	S. Five ; the present, the preter-imperfect, the preter-perfect, the preter-pluperfect, and the future.
M. Quot sunt personæ ?	M. How many persons are there ?
D. Tres ; <i>prima, secunda, tertia</i> .	S. Three ; first, second, third.

A Verb is a part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.—Or, a verb is that part of speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of things.

A verb may be distinguished from any other part of speech these two ways. 1. A verb being the most necessary and essential part of a sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever word with a substantive noun makes full sense, or a sentence, is a verb ; and that which does not make full sense with it, is not a verb. 2. Whatever word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes sense, is a verb ; otherwise not.

I. In most verbs there are two forms or voices ; the active ending in *o*, and the passive in *or*. The former expresses what is *done by* the nominative or person before it : the latter what is *suffered by* or *done to* the nominative or person before it ; as, *Amo*, I love ; *Amor*, I am loved.

II. The moods are divided into *finite* and *infinite*. The first three, viz. the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, and *imperative*, are called finite, because they have certain fixed terminations answering to certain persons both singular and plural. The last is called Infinitive or Infinite, because it is not confined to one number or person more than another.

1. The Indicative mood affirms or denies positively ; as, *Amo*, I love ; *Non Amo*, I do not love : or else asks a question ; as, *an amas ?* dost thou love ? *annon amas ?* dost thou not love ?

2. The Subjunctive mood generally depends upon another verb in the same sentence, either going before or coming after, as *Si me ametis, præcepta mea servate*. If you love me, keep my commandments.

[This mood is commonly branched out into three moods, viz. the *Optative*, the *Subjunctive*, more strictly taken, and the *Potential*. 1. It is called *optative*, when a word importing a wish, as, *utinam*, would to God, *O si*, *O if*, goes before it: 2. It is named *subjunctive*, when it is subjoined to some other conjunction or adverb, or to interrogatives becoming indefinites (See Chapter IX.) 3. It is called *potential*, when with the simple affirmation of the verb is also signified some modification or affection of it, such as a *power*, *possibility*, *liberty*, *duty*, *will*, &c. The signs whereof, in our language, are, *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*, and *had*, (for *would have* or *should have*; as, they had repented, *for would have*.) But because the terminations of these moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the *subjunctive*, to which with small difficulty they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many moods as there are various modifications, wherewith a verb or affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater number, and so we shall have a *promissive*, *hortative*, *precativè*, *concessive*, *mandative*, *interrogative*, mood; nay, a *volitive* and *debitivè*, which are commonly included in the *potential*. As for the *optative*, it is plain that the wish is not in the verb itself, (which signifies only the matter of it, or what is wished) but in the verb *opto*, which is understood, with *ut*, *uti*, or *utinam*, which really signify no more but *that*. And it is very probable that in like manner some verb, or other word, may also be understood to what is called the *potential* mood, such as *ita est*, *res ita est*, *fieri potest ut*, &c. as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; though Mr. Johnson is of another opinion.]

3. The imperative mood commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

4. The infinitive mood expresses the signification of the verb in general, and is englished by *to*; as, *amare*, to love.

III. The tenses are either *simple* or *compound*, the simple tenses are the *present*, the *preter-perfect*, and the *future*.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|------------|---------|
| 1. The present | } tense speaks of time now | } Present. | |
| 2. The preter-perfect | | | } Past. |
| 3. The future | | | |

The compound tenses are the *preter-imperfect*, and the *preter-pluperfect*.

4. The preter-imperfect refers to some past time, and imports, that the thing was present and unfinished then; as, *amabam*, I did love (viz. then.)

5. The preter-pluperfect refers to some past time, and

imports, that the thing was past at, or before that time ; as, *scripseram epistolam*, I had written a letter, [i. e. before that time.]

There is also a compound future tense, called the future-perfect, or exact, which refers to some time yet to come, and imports that a thing as yet future shall be passed and finished at, or before that time ; as, *cum cœnaverò, tu leges*, when I shall have supped, [i. e. after supper] you shall read. This future is only in the subjunctive mood, and the sign of it is *shall have* ; as the other future, called the future-imperfect, is only in the indicative, which, when joined with another future, imports that two things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one time ; as, *cum cœnabo, tu leges*, when I shall sup, [i. e. in time of supper] you shall read.

[And not only the tenses, but even the moods themselves may be divided into simple and compound. I call the indicative a simple mood, because it simply affirms something of its person or nominative. But the other three moods I call compound, because they have some other ideas or modifications of our thoughts superadded to the simple signification of the verb ; such as, a command, a desire, prohibition, possibility, liberty, will, duty, wish, concession, supposition, condition, purpose, &c. These modifications are either really included in the verb ; as, a command, &c. in the *imperative*, and according to Johnson, power, will, duty, &c. in the mood called *potential* ; or closely interwoven with it by the help of a conjunction, adverb, or other verb expressed or understood ; and because these also generally denote time, they very frequently make all the tenses of these moods to become compound tenses. For with respect to their execution they are generally future ; but with respect to their modal signification, they may fall under any of the other distinctions of time as well as the future. Thus, for instance, *lege*, read thou, with respect to its execution, is future, but with respect to the command it is present. Again, in *legam*, I may or can read, the action (if done at all) must be future, but the liberty or possibility is present ; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident that from these modifications of the verb more than from the bare execution of it, the tenses of these moods have been at first distinguished ; so I am of opinion that had grammarians taken their measures accordingly, they had not rendered this matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sanctius, &c. determining the times of these moods by the execution only, have made the whole *imperative* and *subjunctive* of the future time, and the *infinite* and *participles* of

all times, or rather of no time : others, viz. Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. though they will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same grounds, make *utinam legam* the future of the optative ; *utinam legerem* the present of it. By the same rule, they make a future of the potential in *rim* ; as, *citius crediderim*, I should or shall sooner believe : and another of the subjunctive in *issem* ; as, *Juravit se illum statim interfecturum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset*, He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him. Cic. But, with all imaginable deference to these great men, I humbly think that these tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as compound, i. e. respecting one time as to their execution, and another as to their various modifications, superadded to, or involved in their signification. To instance in the two last examples, (because they seem to have the greatest difficulty) *citius crediderim* seem to import these two things, 1st. That *I have and continue to have a reason why I should not believe it* ; which reason is of the imperfect or past time. And 2dly. That *I shall sooner have believed it, than another thing*, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many examples where the preterite in *rim* hath the same signification with the future-perfect in *ro* ; as, *si te inde exemerim*, Terent. for *exemero*. See Voss. lib. v. cap. 15. and Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other example, the composition of two times is yet more evident ; for though *jusjurandum dedisset* be posterior, and consequently future with respect to *juravit*, yet it is prior, not only to the time of the relation, but to *interfecturum*, to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past ; and so of others. The same rule, in my opinion, will likewise hold in the infinitive and participles, which, of themselves, have always one fixed time ; and when they seem to be of another time, that is not in them, but in the verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for instance, *scribere* is always present, or co-existent with the verb before it ; and *scripsisse* is always prior to the same verb in all its tenses ; as, *dicit, dixit, or dicet ; juvat, juvit, or juvabit me scribere* and *me scripsisse*. So also the participles have a fixed time, present, past, or future ; and when any part of the verb *sum* is joined with them, they retain their own times, and have those of that verb superadded to them. But because there are innumerable occasions of speaking, wherein the nice distinctions of times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used : as I could evince by a great many examples, not only in the passive, but active voice, both in the Latin and other lan

guages, if there were place for it; which yet, in my judgment, does not hinder but that every part of a verb hath formally, and of its own nature, a certain time, *simple* or *compound*, to which it is fixed and determined.)

IV. There are two numbers, the singular and the plural; answering to the same numbers of a noun or pronoun.

V. There are three persons in each number: the first speaks of itself, the second is spoken to, and the third is spoken of.—The *first* hath only *ego* and *nos*, the *second* only *tu* and *vos*, and the *third* any substantive noun, singular and plural, put before the respective terminations of the verb, answering to them through all voices, moods, and tenses.

[A verb hath the same respect to its nominative that an adjective hath to its substantive; and therefore, as an adjective hath not properly either genders or numbers, but certain terminations fitted for those of its substantive, so a verb hath properly neither persons nor numbers, but certain terminations answering to the persons and numbers of its nominative.]

NOTE 1. That *ego* and *tu* are seldom expressed, because the terminations of the verb immediately discover them without any hazard of a mistake.

NOTE 2. That if a substantive noun be joined with *ego* or *tu*, the verb is of the person of these pronouns, not of the noun.

NOTE 3. That in the continuation of a discourse, the third person is also frequently understood, because easily known by what went before; and these pronouns, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, *quis*, and *qui*, do often supply the place of it.

THE ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Present	Imp.	Act. the theme of the verb, and <i>est</i> , <i>eth</i> , or <i>s</i> ; or, for the greater emphasis, <i>do</i> , <i>dost</i> , <i>doth</i> , or <i>does</i> , before it.
		Pas. <i>am</i> , <i>art</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>are</i> , <i>be</i> , <i>beest</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , <i>t</i> , &c.
Perfect.	Imp.	Act. <i>ed</i> , <i>edst</i> , &c. or for the greater emphasis, <i>did</i> , <i>didst</i> , before it.
		Pas. <i>was</i> , <i>wast</i> , <i>were</i> , <i>wert</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c.
	Fut. P. up.	Act. <i>have</i> , <i>hast</i> , <i>hath</i> , or <i>has</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c. as in the imperfect.
		Pas. <i>have been</i> , <i>hast been</i> , <i>hath</i> or <i>has been</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c.
Fut. P. up.	Fut. P. up.	Act. <i>had</i> , <i>hadst</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c.
		Pas. <i>had been</i> , <i>hadst been</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c.
		Act. <i>shall</i> , <i>will</i> , <i>shalt</i> , <i>wilt</i> , with the verb.
		Pas. <i>shall be</i> , <i>will be</i> , <i>shalt be</i> , <i>wilt be</i> , with a word in <i>ed</i> , <i>en</i> , &c.

The *subjunctive mood* active has frequently these signs:

Present, *may*, or *can*.

Imperf. *might*, *could*, *would*, *should*.

Perfect, *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*.

Pluperf. *may have*, or *might have*, *could have*, *would have*, *should have*.

Future, *shall have*.

The Passive has frequently the same signs with *be* or *been*.

De Conjugationibus.

M. Quot sunt conjugationes?

D. Quatuor; *prima*, *secunda*, *tertia*, et *quarta*.

M. Quæ sunt notæ harum conjugationum?

D.

Prima	} habet	} {	A longum	} Ante re
Secunda			E longum	
Tertia			E breve	
Quarta			I longum	

Infinitivi.

Of Conjugations.

M. How many conjugations are there?

S. Four; first, second, third, and fourth.

M. What are the marks of these conjugations?

S.

First	} hath	} {	A long	} Before re of
Second			E long	
Third			E short	
Fourth			I long	

the Infinit.

The common *characteristic* or mark by which these conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three vowels, A, E, I, before the *re* of the infinitive active, though they also may be known by the same vowels in several other parts of them; for *a* long is most frequent in the first, *e* long in the second, *e* or *i* short in the third, and *i* long in the fourth; only *e* before *bam*, *bas*, *bat*, &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini*, is always long, in whatever conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed, that the *preterites* and *supines*, and all the parts formed from them (because of the great irregularity of their middle syllables, and constant agreement in their last vowel, and in the terminations arising from it, in all conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one conjugation more than another, for there is nothing, for example, in *fricui*, *docui*, *elicui*, *amicui*, or in *frictum*, *doctum*, *elicutum*, *amictum*, or in the parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their conjugations.

PRIMA CONJUGATIO.
AMO.

Vox Activa.

Præcipuæ Partes.

Præs. Indic. Perfect.
Am-o, am-avi,

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.
TO LOVE.

The Active Voice.

The Principal Parts.

Sup. Præs. Infîn.
am-âtum, am-âre.

INDICATIVUS MODUS.

Præsens.

Sing. 1 Am-o,
2 Am-as,
3 Am-at ;

Plur. 1 Am-âmus,
2 Am-atis,
3 Am-ant.

Imperfectum.

Sing. 1 Am-âbam,
2 Am-abas,
3 Am-abat ;

Plur. 1 Am-abâmus,
2 Am-abatis,
3 Am-abant.

Perfectum.

Sing. 1 Am-avi,
2 Am-avisti,
3 Am-avit ;

Plur. 1 Am-avîmus,
2 Am-avistis,
3 Am-avêrunt, v. avère.

Plusquamperfectum.

Sing. 1 Am-avêram,
2 Am-averas,
3 Am-averat ;

Plur. 1 Am-averâmus,
2 Am-averatis,
3 Am-averant.

Futurum.

Sing. 1 Am-âbo,
2 Am-abis,
3 Am-abit ;

Plur. 1 Am-âbîmus,
2 Am-âbitis,
3 Am-abunt.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Present.

1 I love or do love,
2 Thou lovest or dost love,
3 He loveth or doth love ;
1 We love or do love,
2 Ye (or you) love or do love,
3 They love or do love.

The Imperfect.

1 I loved or did love,
2 Thou lovedst or didst love,
3 He loved or did love ;
1 We loved or did love,
2 Ye loved or did love,
3 They loved or did love.

The Perfect.

1 I have loved,*
2 Thou hast loved,
3 He hath loved ;
1 We have loved,
2 Ye have loved,
3 They have loved.

The Pluperfect.

1 I had loved,
2 Thou hadst loved,
3 He had loved ;
1 We had loved,
2 Ye had loved,
3 They had loved.

The Future.

1 I shall or will love,
2 Thou shalt or wilt love,
3 He shall or will love ;
1 We shall or will love,
2 Ye shall or will love,
3 They shall or will love.

* Or, I loved or did love. Thou lovedst or didst love, &c. as in the Imperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVUS MODUS.

Præsens.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-em,
	2 Am-es,
	3 Am-et ;
<i>Plur</i>	1 Am-ēmus,
	2 Am-ētis,
	3 Am-ent.

Imperfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-ārem,	1 I might, could, would or should love,
	2 Am-ares,	2 Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c. love,
	3 Am-aret ;	3 He might, could, would or should love ;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-arēmus,	1 We might, could, would or should love,
	2 Am-arētis,	2 Ye might, could, would or should love,
	3 Am-arent.	3 They might, could, would or should love.

Perfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-avērim,	1 I may have loved,
	2 Am-averis,	2 Thou mayst have loved
	3 Am-averit ;	3 He may have loved ;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-averīmus,	1 We may have loved,
	2 Am-averītis,	2 Ye may have loved,
	3 Am-averint.	3 They may have loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-avissem,	1 I might, could, &c. have loved,
	2 Am-avisses,	2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c. have loved,
	3 Am-avisset ;	3 He might, could, &c. have loved ;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-avissēmus,	1 We might, could, &c. have loved,
	2 Am-avissētis,	2 Ye might, could, &c. have loved,
	3 Am-avissent.	3 They might, could, &c. have loved.

Futurum.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-avēro,	1 I shall have loved,
	2 Am-averis,	2 Thou shalt have loved,
	3 Am-averit ;	3 He shall have loved ;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-averīmus,	1 We shall have loved,
	2 Am-averītis,	2 Ye shall have loved,
	3 Am-averint.	3 They shall have loved.

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.

Præsens.

<i>Sing.</i>	2 Am-a vel am-āto,
	3 Am-ato ;
<i>Plur.</i>	2 Am-ate vel am-atôte,
	3 Am-anto

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Present.

1 I may or can love,
2 Thou mayst or canst love,
3 He may or can love ;
1 We may or can love,
2 Ye may or can love,
3 They may or can love.

The Imperfect.

1 I might, could, would or should love,
2 Thou mightst, couldst, wouldst, &c. love,
3 He might, could, would or should love ;
1 We might, could, would or should love,
2 Ye might, could, would or should love,
3 They might, could, would or should love.

The Perfect.

1 I may have loved,
2 Thou mayst have loved
3 He may have loved ;
1 We may have loved,
2 Ye may have loved,
3 They may have loved.

The Pluperfect.

1 I might, could, &c. have loved,
2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c. have loved,
3 He might, could, &c. have loved ;
1 We might, could, &c. have loved,
2 Ye might, could, &c. have loved,
3 They might, could, &c. have loved.

The Future.

1 I shall have loved,
2 Thou shalt have loved,
3 He shall have loved ;
1 We shall have loved,
2 Ye shall have loved,
3 They shall have loved.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Present.

2 Love thou or do thou love
3 Let him love.
2 Love ye or do ye love,
3 Let them love.

INFINITIVUS MODUS.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Præs.</i> Am-äre.	<i>Pres.</i> <i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Am-avisse.	<i>Perf.</i> <i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-atürum esse v. fuisse.	<i>Fut.</i> <i>To be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPIA.

THE PARTICIPLES.

<i>Præs.</i> Am-ans.	<i>Present,</i> <i>Loving.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Am-atürus, -a, -um.	<i>Future,</i> <i>About to love.</i>

GERUNDIA.

THE GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i> Am-andum.	<i>Nom.</i> <i>Loving.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Am-andi.	<i>Gen.</i> <i>Of loving.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Am-ando.	<i>Dat.</i> <i>To loving.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Am-andum.	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Loving.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Am-ando.	<i>Abl.</i> <i>From, in or by loving.</i>

SUPINA.

THE SUPINES.

<i>Prius,</i> Am-atum.	<i>First,</i> <i>To love.</i>
<i>Posterius,</i> Am-atu.	<i>Last,</i> <i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

VOX PASSIVA.

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Amor,

amätus,

amari.

INDICATIVUS.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

Præsens.

The Present.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 Am-or,	1 <i>I am loved,</i>
2 Am-äris vel -äre,	2 <i>Thou art loved,</i>
3 Am-atur ;	3 <i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1 Am-amur,	1 <i>We are loved,</i>
2 Am-amini,	2 <i>Ye are loved,</i>
3 Am-antur.	3 <i>They are loved.</i>

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> 1 Am-äbar,	1 <i>I was loved,</i>
2 Am-abäris vel -abäre,	2 <i>Thou wast [wert] loved,</i>
3 Am-abatur ;	3 <i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1 Am-abamur,	1 <i>We were loved,</i>
2 Am-abamini,	2 <i>Ye were loved,</i>
3 Am-abantur.	3 <i>They were loved.</i>

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-ätus,	{	1 sum vel fui,	1 <i>I have been loved,</i>
		2 es vel fuisti,	2 <i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
		3 est vel fuit ;	3 <i>He hath been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ati,	{	1 sumus vel fuimus,	1 <i>We have been loved,</i>
		2 estis vel fuistis,	2 <i>Ye have been loved,</i>
		3 sunt fuerunt v. fuere.	3 <i>They have been loved.</i>

Plusquamperfectum.

The Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> Am-atus,	{	1 eram v. fueram,	1 I had been loved,
		2 eras v. fueras,	2 Thou hadst been loved,
		3 erat v. fuerat;	3 He had been loved;
<i>Plur.</i> Am-ati,	{	1 eramus v. fueramus,	1 We had been loved,
		2 eratis v. fueratis,	2 Ye had been loved,
		3 erant v. fuerant.	3 They had been loved.

Futurum.

The Future.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-abor,	1 I shall or will be loved,
	2 Am-aberis v. -abere,	2 Thou shalt or wilt be loved,
	3 Am-abitur;	3 He shall or will be loved;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-abimur,	1 We shall or will be loved,
	2 Am-abimini,	2 Ye shall or will be loved,
	3 Am-abuntur	3 They shall or will be loved.

SUBJUNCTIVUS MODUS.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Præsens.

The Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-er,	1 I may or can be loved,
	2 Am-eris v. -ere,	2 Thou mayst or canst be loved,
	3 Am-etur;	3 He may or can be loved;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-émur,	1 We may or can be loved,
	2 Am-eminí,	2 Ye may or can be loved,
	3 Am-entur.	3 They may or can be loved.

Imperfectum.

The Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	1 Am-ärer,	1 I might, could, &c. be loved,
	2 Am-areris v. arere,	2 Thou mightst, couldst, &c. be loved,
	3 Am-aretur;	3 He might, could, &c. be loved;
<i>Plur.</i>	1 Am-aremur,	1 We might, could, &c. be loved,
	2 Am-aremini,	2 Ye might, could, &c. be loved,
	3 Am-arentur.	3 They might, could, &c. be loved.

Perfectum.

The Perfect.

<i>S.</i> Am-atus,	{	1 sim v. fuërim,	1 I may have been loved,
		2 sis v. fueris,	2 Thou mayst have been loved,
		3 sit v. fuerit;	3 He may have been loved;
<i>P.</i> Am-ati,	{	1 simus v. fuerimus,	1 We may have been loved;
		2 sitis v. fueritis,	2 Ye may have been loved,
		3 sint v fuerint.	3 They may have been loved.

Plusquamperfectum.

S. Am- atus,	{	1 essem v. fuisset,
		2 esses v. fuisses,
		3 esset v. fuisset;
P. Am- ati,	{	1 essemus v. fuissetis,
		2 essetis v. fuissetis,
		3 essent v. fuissent.

The Pluperfect.

1	<i>I might, &c. have</i>
2	<i>Thou mightst, &c. have</i>
3	<i>He might, &c. have</i>
1	<i>We might, &c. have</i>
2	<i>Ye might, &c. have</i>
3	<i>They might, &c. have</i>

} *been loved.**Futurum.*

Sing. Am-atus,	{	1 fuero,
		2 fueris,
		3 fuerit;
Plur. Am-ati,	{	1 fuerimus,
		2 fueritis,
		3 fuerint.

The Future.

1	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
2	<i>Thou shalt have been loved,</i>
3	<i>He shall have been loved;</i>
1	<i>We shall have been loved,</i>
2	<i>Ye shall have been loved,</i>
3	<i>They shall have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVUS MODUS.

Præsens.

Sing	2	Am-are vel -ator,
	3	Am-ator;
Plur.	2	Am-amini,
	3	Am-antor.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The Present.

2	<i>Be thou loved,</i>
3	<i>Let him be loved;</i>
2	<i>Be ye loved,</i>
3	<i>Let them be loved.</i>

INFINITIVUS MODUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Am-ari,
<i>Perf.</i>	Am-atus esse vel fuisse,
<i>Fut.</i>	Am-atum iri,

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>To be loved,</i>
<i>To have or had been loved,</i>
<i>To be about to be loved.</i>

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Perfecti Temporis,</i>	Am-atus,
<i>Futuri,</i>	Am-andus,

THE PARTICIPLES.

-a, -um, Perfect,	<i>Loved,</i>
-a, -um, Fut.	<i>To be loved.</i>

SECUNDA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo, docui, doctum, docere

INDICATIVUS.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3	
<i>Pr.</i>	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-ëtis,	-ent.	
<i>Im.</i>	Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	

Per. Doc-ui, -u isti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, } -uērunt,
 v. -uère.
Pl. Doc-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Doc-ēbo, -ēbis, -ēbit; -ēbimus, -ēbitis, -ēbunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-eam, -eas, -eat; -eāmus, -eatis, -eant.
Im. Doc-ērem, -eres, -eret; -erēmus, -eretis, -erent.
Per. Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pl. Doc-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc- { -e, -eto; } -ēte, -ento.
 { -ēto, { -etōte,

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Doc-ēre.

Perf. Doc-uisse.

Fut. Doc-tūrus.

esse v. fuisse.

SUPINA.

1 Doctum.

2 Doctu.

PARTICIPIA.

Pr. Doc-ens.

Fu. Doc-tūrus.

GERUNDIA.

Doc-endum.

Doc-endi.

Doc-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, docēri.

INDICATIVUS.

Singular.

Plural.

Pr. Doc-eor, { -ēris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.
 { -ēre,
Im. Doc-ēbar, { -ebāris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
 { -ebare,
Fut. Doc-ēbor, { -ebēris, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.
 { -ebere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-ear, { -eāris, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.
 { -eāre,
Im. Doc-ērer, { -erēris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
 { -erēre,

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Doc- { -ēre, -etor; -emini, -entor.
 { -etor,

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Doc-ēri.

Perf. Doc-tus esse vel fuisse.

Fut. Doc-tum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Doc-tus, -a, -um.

Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um.

TERTIA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, legere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Lēg-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbamus,	-ēbatis,	-ēbant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	-erunt v. -erit.
<i>Plus.</i>	Leg-ēram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Leg-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Im.</i>	Leg-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Leg-ērīn,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plus.</i>	Leg-issēm,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Leg-ēro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-	{ -e, -ito,	-ito;	{ -ite, -itote,	-unto
--------------	------	----------------	-------	--------------------	-------

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-ēre.
<i>Perf.</i>	Leg-isse.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lec-turus
	esse vel fuisse.

SUPINA.

1.	Lec-tum.
2.	Lec-tu.

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Pr.</i>	Leg-ens.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lec-turus.

GELTUNGSIA.

Leg-endum
Leg-endi.
Leg-endo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi

INDICATIVUS.

	Singular	Plural.	
<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-or,	{ -ēris, -ēre, -ebaris, -ebare,	{ -tur; -mur, -mini, -antur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Leg-ēbar,	{ -ēris, -ēre,	{ -batur; -bamur, -bamini, -ebantur.
<i>Fut.</i>	Leg-ar,	{ -ēris, -ēre,	{ -ētur; -ēmur, -ēmini, -ēntur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Præs.</i>	Leg-ar,	{ -āris, -ārē,	{ -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Leg-ērer,	{ -erēris, -erēre,	{ -eretur; -erēmur, -erēmini, -erēntur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Leg- { -ere, -itor; -imini, -untor.
 { -itor,

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIA.

<i>Præs. Leg-i.</i>		<i>Perf. Lec-tus,</i>	-a,	-um.
<i>Perf. Lec-tus esse vel fuisse.</i>		<i>Fut. Leg-endus,</i>	-a,	-um.
<i>Fut. Lec-tum iri.</i>				

QUARTA CONJUGATIO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, *audivi,* *auditum,* *audire.*

INDICATIVUS.

*Singular.**Plural.*

1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pr. Aud-io,</i>	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
<i>Im. Aud-iēbam,</i>	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Pe. Aud-īvi,</i>	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	}
<i>Pl. Aud-ivēram,</i>	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	
<i>Fu. Aud-iam,</i>	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ierant.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Pr. Aud-iam,</i>	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.
<i>Im. Aud-irem,</i>	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-irent.
<i>Pe. Aud-ivērim,</i>	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint
<i>Pl. Aud-ivissem,</i>	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent
<i>Fu. Aud-ivēro,</i>	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS

Pr. Aud- { -i, -ito; { -ite, -iunto.
 { -ito,

INFINITIVUS

SUPINA.

PARTICIPIA.

GERUNDIA

<i>Pr. Aud-ire.</i>		1 <i>Aud-ītum.</i>		<i>Pr. Aud-iens.</i>		<i>Aud-iendum.</i>
<i>Pe. Aud-ivisse.</i>		2 <i>Aud-ītu.</i>		<i>Fu. Aud-iturus.</i>		<i>Aud-iendi.</i>
<i>Fu. Aud-iturus.</i> <i>esse vel fuisse.</i>						<i>Aud-iendo.</i>

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri

INDICATIVUS.

Singular.

Plural.

Pr. Aud-ior,	{ -iris,	-itur;	-Imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.
	{ -ire,				
Im. Aud-iēbar,	{ -iebaris,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur
	{ -iebāre,				
Fu. Aud-iar,	{ -iēris,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.
	{ -iēre,				

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Aud-iar,	{ -iāris,	-iatur;	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.
	{ -iare,				
Im. Aud-irer,	{ -irēris,	-iretur;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.
	{ -irere,				

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. Aud-	{ -ire,	-itor;	-imini,	-iuntor.
	{ -itor,			

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Aud-iri.
Perf. Aud-itus esse vel fuisse.
Fut. Aud-itum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Aud-itus,	-a, -um.
Fut. Aud-iendus,	-a, -um.

NOTE. That in the Examples of the Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations, we have omitted such parts of the Passive Voice as are supplied by the Participle Perfect with the Verb Sum, viz. The Perfect and Pluperfect of the Indicative, and the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future of the Subjunctive, as being the same in all Conjugations with the Example of the First, the change of the Participle only excepted: But it is carefully to be observed, that the Participle being an Adjective, must agree in Gender, Number, and Case, with its Substantive, or [which is the same thing] with the Person before it.

I. REMARKS showing when a LATIN VERB is to be rendered otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

1. When the continuation of a thing is signified, the English verb may be varied in all its tenses by the participle in *ing* with the verb *am*; as,

Pres. <i>I am reading,</i>	} for	{	<i>I read.</i>
Imp. <i>I was reading,</i>			<i>I did read.</i>
Perf. <i>I have been reading,</i>			<i>I have read.</i>
Plup. <i>I had been reading,</i>			<i>I had read.</i>
Fut. <i>I shall be reading.</i>			<i>I shall read.</i>

So likewise in the *passive voice*, *the house is building*, *domus ædificatur*: *the lesson was prescribing*, *lectio præscribatur*. Sometimes *a* is set before the participle; as, *while the house is a building, it is a doing, he is a dying*.

2. When a question is asked, the nominative case or person is set after the verb, or the sign of the verb; as, *love I? do I love? can I love? should he be loved?*

3. We have made THOU the second person singular, to distinguish it from the plural: but it is customary with us, [as also with the *French* and others,] though we speak but to one particular person, to use the plural YOU, and never THOU, but when we address ourselves to Almighty God, or otherwise when we signify familiarity, disdain, or contempt.

4. The *perfect* of the *indicative* is often Englished as the *imperfect*; as, *nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this man.—See a train of examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib. 1. from v. 21. to 39.*

5. The *Perfect Tense* is frequently Englished by HAD after *antequam*, *postquam*, *ubi*, or *ut* for *postquam*; as, *postquam superavimus Isthmum*, after we had [were] passed over the Isthmus. *Ovid. Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, when he had spoken these words. *Liv. Ut me salutavit, statim Roman profectus est*, after he had saluted me, &c. *Cic.*

6. We have chosen *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, &c. for the English of the *Subjunctive mood*, because these are the most frequent signs of it, and distinguish it best from other moods; but very often it is the same with the *Indicative*, save only that it hath some *Conjunction* or *indefinite* word before it; such as, *if*, *seeing*, *lest*, *that*, *although*, *I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the cause why I love. *Ovid.* And frequently it hath both; as *Oro ut ames*, I entreat that you may love. *Idem.*

7. The *Present of the Subjunctive* after *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes Englished as the *Imperfect*; as, *Quasi intelligent qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of person he is. *Cic.*

8. When a question is asked, the *Present of the Subjunctive* is frequently Englished by *SHALL* or *SHOULD*; as, *Eloqua an sileam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid r*

feram? Why should I mention every thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*? as, *Non est* (supple *causa*) *quod eas*, There is no reason why you should go, or you need not go. Sometimes it is Englished by *WOULD*; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] wickedness. *Ovid.*

9. We have Englished the Perfect of the Subjunctive in *RIM*, by *MAY HAVE*; (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri venerint*, That such men as these may not have come in vain. *Cic. Forsitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it;) to distinguish it from the Present and Pluperfect, by the signs of which it is also most frequently Englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim*? Where should I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit*? Could one man make so great a slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an error. *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen [or could see.] *Quintil.*

10. This Perfect in *RIM* sometimes inclines very much to a future signification, and then it is Englished by *SHOULD*, *WOULD*, *COULD*, *CAN*, *WILL*, *SHALL*; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe. *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear. *Cic. Ciceronem cuicumque eorum facile opposuerim*, I could easily match Cicero with any of them. *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell. *Cic. Nec tamen excluderim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others. *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the least I shall be undone. *Ter.* But all these ways of speaking, though indeed they respect the Future as to the execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a time when their futurity shall be past; and so come near in signification to the Future in *ro*.

11. The Perfect of the Subjunctive after *quasi*, *tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be Englished by *HAD*; as, *Quasi affuerim*, as if I had been present, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, as if they had already overcome. *Cic.*

12. The Pluperfect in *ISSEM* is sometimes Englished by *SHOULD*; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcumque imperasset, se esse facturos*, He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should command] they would do. *Cæs. Fœdus ictum est his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine vicissent, is alteri imperaret*, An agreement was made on these terms, that the people, whose countrymen should be victorious in that combat, should have the sovereignty over the other. *Liv.* And this happens when a thing is signified as future at a certain past time referred to; and commonly takes

place, when what was formerly said directly is afterwards recited indirectly; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quod unque optaris*, Doubt not, whatsoever thou shalt choose shall be given thee. *Ovid, Sol Phœthonti facturum se esse dixit, quicquid optasset*, The Sun told Phæton that he would do whatsoever he should choose. *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, that, what was the *future* of the *subjunctive* in the direct speech, becomes the *pluperfect* in the indirect recital of it. See *Turner's Exercises*, p. 21, &c. But as we have said, p. 30. the *pluperfect*, notwithstanding its coming in the place of a *future*, still retains its own proper compound time, that is, it was prior to a thing now past at the time of the recital by *Cicero*, though it was future when first spoken by the *Sun*. And therefore there is no reason for making this termination in *issem* a *future* tense, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Though the proper English of the FUTURE in *RO* be *SHALL HAVE*, yet generally the *HAVE* or the *SHALL*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *Qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, He who shall cut off *Antony*, shall put an end to the war. *Cic. Haud desinam donec perfecero hoc*, I will not give over till I have effected this. *Ter. Si negaverit*, If he denies it. *Cic.* Sometimes it is Englished by *WILL*; as, *Dixerit fortasse aliquis*, Somebody will perhaps say. *Cic. Aut consolando, aut consilio, aut re juvero*, I will assist you either by comforting you, or with counsel, or with money. *Idem.* But though we thus render the *Future* in *RO* in our language, and though (which is more material) very frequently it and the *Future* of the *Indicative* are used promiscuously, yet I cannot be persuaded that in any instance the formal significations of these are the same, as Mr. *Johnson* contends, p. 339. But still think with the great *Vossius*, that the *Future* in *RO* is always a *Future perfect*, that is, that there is a time insinuated when a thing yet future shall be finished or past; and that even when a *Future* of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which in order of time should be done before it; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, si disputabis*, You shall have done [shall do] me a great favour, if you shall dispute. *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finishing of an action yet future, without formally considering the finishing of another action on which it depends; and on the contrary? But if the promiscuous usage of tenses, one for another, be sufficient to make them formally the same, then we shall confound all tenses, and overthrow the very arguments Mr. *Johnson* makes use of against *Sanctius*, with respect to the tenses of the infinitive.

14. The *to* of the Infinitive is generally omitted after *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, (which are sometimes verbs themselves, and not the bare signs of them;) also after *must*, *bid*, *dare*, *let*, *help*, and *make*.

15. But what is most to be regarded in the Infinitive is, that when it hath an Accusative before it, it is commonly Englished as the Indicative mood, the particle *that* being sometimes put before it, but oftener understood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the same tenses of the Infinitive are differently Englished, according as the verb varies its tenses; as will appear in the following scheme:

{ <i>Dicit me scribere,</i>	He says [that] I write.
{ <i>Dixit me scribere,</i>	He said [that] I was writing.
{ <i>Dicet me scribere,</i>	He shall say [that] I am writing.
{ <i>Dicit me scripsisse,</i>	He says [that] I wrote, or did write.
{ <i>Dixit me scripsisse,</i>	He said [that] I had written.
{ <i>Dicet me scripsisse,</i>	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write
{ <i>Dicit me scripturum [esse]</i>	He says [that] I will write.
{ <i>Dixit me scripturum [esse]</i>	He said (that) I would write.
{ <i>Dicet me scripturum [esse]</i>	He shall say (that) I will write.
{ <i>Dicit me scripturum [fuisse]</i>	He says (that) I would have written.
{ <i>Dixit me scripturum [fuisse]</i>	He said (that) I would have written.
{ <i>Dicet me scripturum [fuisse]</i>	He shall say (that) I would have written

It will be of great use to accustom the learner to render the Infinitive after this manner, both in English and Latin, especially after he has been taught something of construction; and then to cause him to vary the Accusative *me* into *te*, *se*, *illum*, *hominem*, *fœminam*, &c. and these again into the plural *nos*, *vos*, *se*, *illos*, *homines*, *fœminas*, &c. But he must be careful to make the participles agree with them in gender, number, and case.

NOTE 1. That when the preceding verb is of the present or future tense, the future of the Infinitive with *esse*, is rendered by *shall* or *will*; and when it is of the perfect tense, the future of the Infinitive is rendered by *would*, as in the examples above; and sometimes by *should*; as, *Dixi te sciturum esse*, I said that you should know.

NOTE 2. That when the preceding verb is of the imperfect or pluperfect tense, the English of the Infinitive is the same as when it is of the perfect.

16. The perfect of the Indicative and Subjunctive passive, made up with *sum* or *sim*, are Englished by *am*, *art*, *is*, *are*, instead of *have been*, when the thing is signified to be just now past; as, *Vulneratus sum*, I am wounded; *Opus finitum est*,

The word is finished; *Cum tempora mutata sint*, Since the times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui*, it is frequently Englished by *was, wast, were, wert*; as, *Roma fuit capta*, Rome was taken: as is also what is called the Pluperfect, with *eram* and *essem*; as, *Labor finitus erat*, The labour was finished; *Si labor finitus esset*, If the labour were finished.

II. REMARKS ON THE LATIN CONJUGATIONS.

1. A great part of the Passive voice, and some of the Active is made up of two of its own Participles, and the auxiliary verb *sum* (of which you have the full conjugation, p. 62.) after this manner:

The Participle Perfect with	{ <i>Sum</i> or <i>fui</i> <i>eram</i> or <i>fueram</i> <i>sim</i> or <i>fuerim</i> <i>essem</i> or <i>fuissem</i> <i>fuiro</i> <i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i>	} makes the	{ Perf. } { Plup. } Indicat. { Perf. } { Plup. } Subjunct. { Fut. } { Perf. } Infinit.	} Passive.
The Participle Fut. Act. with	{ <i>esse</i> or <i>fuisse</i> . }		{ Fut. } { Infinit. }	Active.

2. Having, p. 40, laid it down as a probable opinion, that every part of a verb, with all its Participles, have a certain fixed time, simple or compound, which they formally and of their own nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great variety that is found in the Passive voice. To put this matter in the clearest light I am able, I must premise another division of the tenses, *viz.* into Passing and Past; or into such as import the continuance of an action or thing, without regard to the ending or finishing of it; and such as import that the thing is finished (or to be finished) and done. Of the first sort are the present, imperfect, and future-imperfect; of the second sort are the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect. See page 29. From this division of the tenses, together with what we have formerly said, we are furnished with an easy method of distinguishing all the parts of the passive. Thus, for instance, let the subject of discourse be the building of a house.

1. When I say *Domus ædificatur*, I mean that it is just now a building, but not finished. 2. When *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain past time, a building, but not then finished. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that some time hence it shall be a building without any formal regard to the finishing of it. But when I make use of the participle perfect, I always signify a thing completed and ended; but with these subdistinctions. 1. *Ædifi*

cata est; I mean simply, that it is finished, without any regard to the time when. 2. *Edificata fuit*; it is finished, and some time since has intervened. 3. *Edificata erat*; it was finished at a certain past time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Edificata fuerat*; it was finished before a certain past time referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Edificata erit*; it shall be finished sometime hereafter, either without regard to a particular time when, or with respect to a certain time yet future, with which its finishing shall be contemporary. 6. And lastly, *Edificata fuerit*; it shall be finished and past before another thing yet future, to which its finishing shall be prior. And thus we have nine different times, or complications of times, without confounding them with one another. But then, how comes it to pass that these are so frequently used promiscuously? I answer, that this proceeds from one or more of these four reasons.—1. Because it very frequently happens in discourse that we have no occasion particularly to consider these various relations and complications of times; and it is the same thing to our purpose whether the thing is or was done, or a doing; or whether it was done just now, or some time ago; or whether another thing was (or shall be) contemporary with, or prior to it: and the matter being thus, we reckon ourselves at liberty to take several parts of the verb at random, as being secure not only of being understood, but also that, in these circumstances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the rules above, shall be found literally true. 2. It is usual with us to state ourselves as present with, and as it were eye witnesses of the things we relate, though really they were transacted long before; whence it is that we frequently use the present instead of some past time. 3. It is to be remarked, that there are some verbs, the action whereof is in some sense finished when begun; in which case it will sometimes be all one whether we use the passing or past tenses. And, 4. The present tense (which strictly speaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger acceptation, and sometimes used for the future, when we signify that the execution is very near, or (according to Perizonius) when, together with the action, we take in also the preparation to it. The brevity we are confined to, will not allow us to illustrate these things with examples. But by them I think we may account for the promiscuous usage of the tenses, in both voices; and what cannot be reduced to these, seems to be an abuse of the language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the poets, ought not to be made a common standard. I shall only

add for a proof that these tenses are not always to be used indifferently, that when we signify a thing to be just now finished, we cannot use *fui*, or *fuorim*, or *fuissae*, but *sui*, *sim*, and *esse*.

3. Whether the learner should be obliged to get by heart those parts of the Passive that are supplied by *Sui*, or if they should be referred to construction (to which they seem more naturally to belong) I leave to the discretion of the master.

4. Besides those parts which are thus made up, all the other parts may be resolved into its own participles, and the verb *Sui* though their significations are not precisely the same; as,

Amo,	amabam,	amavi,	amaveram,	amabo.
Sum amans,	eram amans,	fui amans,	fueram amans,	} ero amans, or sum amaturus. amarer. amatus essera.
Amor,	amabar,	amabor,	amer,	
Sum amatus,	eram amatus,	ero amatus,	amatus sim,	

5. The participle in *rus* with the verb *Sui* is frequently used instead of the Future of the Indicative, especially if purpose or intention is signified; as, *Profecturus sum*, or *Proficiscar*, I will go, or I am to go; and with *sim* and *essem* instead of the Future-imperfect or Pluperfect of the Subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin sit facturus*, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin esset facturus*, I doubted not but he would do it, and not *quin fecerit*, or *faceret*, or *fecisset*.

6. We have not joined *ero* with *fuero* for the Future of the Subjunctive, because we thought it incongruous to couple words of different moods; though it must be owned that it comes nearer in signification to the Future of the Subjunctive, than that of the Indicative; as, Ovid. *Qui cum victus erit*, is much the same as *Victus fuerit*: and so these ancient lawyers, Scævola, Brutus, and Manilius understand the words of the Atinian law, *Quod subreptum erit, ejus rei aeterna auctoritas esto*. But that a Preterite time is there insinuated, is owing not to the word *erit*, but to the preterite participle with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See Aulus Gellius, lib. xvii. cap. 7.

7. We have omitted the termination *minor*, in the second person plural of the imperative, not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary standard (as the common Rudiments do) which is to be found only once or twice in Plautus, Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor*; and Pseud. 2. 2. *Pariter progruhininar*.

8. For the same reason we have excluded the ancient termination *asso*, in the Future Subjunctive of the first conjugation; as, *excantasso*, in the laws of the twelve tables, *levasso*,

in Ennius; *abjurasso, invitasso, canasso, irritasso, servasso,* &c. in Plautus; for *excantavero, levavero,* &c. to which may be added *esso* of the second Conjugation; as, *licessit. idem; prohibessit.* Cic. for *licuerit prohibuerit.* To these some add *jusso, for jussero,* in that of *Virg. Æn. 11. v. 467.*

Cætera, quæ jusso, mecum manus inferat arma.

But though I was once of that opinion, yet now I incline with Vossius to think that it is only a *Syncope*: but not for the reason brought for it by him, namely, that the other examples in *so* change *r* into *ss*, as, *levavo, levasso*; but because I believe these old futures were formed not from the common futures in *ero*, as he supposes, but from the second person sing. of the present of the Indic. by adding *so*; as, *levas, levasso; prohibes, prohibesso*: according to which rule *jubeo* must have formed *jubesso*, not *jusso*.

9. Upon the same account we have omitted the future of the infinitive in *assere* formed from *asso*; as, *impetrassere, reconciliassere, expugnassere,* in Plautus; for *impetraturum esse, &c.*

10. Though we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus esse vel fuisse, &c.* in the nominative, as, *dicitur amaturus esse,* yet we have contented ourselves with the accusative *amaturum* and *amatum*, as most common, reserving the distinction between these to construction.* [See page 86.]

11. The Future of the Infinitive Passive is made up of the First Supine and *iri* the Infinitive Passive of *eo*: and therefore it is not varied in numbers and genders, as the parts made up of the participle with *sum*.

12. But the supine with *ire* is not the future of the infinitive active, as some teach; for such phrases as these, *amatum ire, doctum ire,* are rather of the present than future tense.

13. The Participle in *dus* with *esse* and *fuisse*, is not properly the future of the infinitive passive, as is commonly believed: for it does not so much import futurity, as necessity, duty, or merit. For there is a great difference between these two sentences, *Dicit literas à se scriptum iri,* and *Dicit literas à se scribendas esse*; the first signifying, That a letter will be written by him, or, That he will write a letter; and the second, That a letter must be written by him, or, He is obliged to write a letter. For though Sanctius, and Messieurs de Port Royal contend that this participle is sometimes used for simple futurity, yet I think Perizonius and Johnson have clearly evinced the contrary.

* The nominative has been adopted in this edition.

14. It is to be noted, that the *Imperative* mood wants the first person both singular and plural, because no man can or needs command or exhort himself: or, if he does, he must justify himself out of the first into the second person, as in that of Catullus, speaking to himself, *At, tu, Catulle, destinatus obdura*; but do you, Catullus, continue obstinate.

15. The present of the Subjunctive is most frequently used instead of the Imperative, especially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus, &c.* as, *Valeas*, farewell, for *Vale*. *Ne facias*, Do it not, rather than *Ne fac*. And sometimes the future of the Subjunctive; as, *Tu videris*, See you to it. *Ne dixeris*, Don't say it. And sometimes also the future of the Indicative; as, *Non occides*, Thou shalt not kill, for *Ne occide*, or *occidito*. *Sed valebis meaque negotia videbis*. Cic. i. e. *Sed vale, meaque negotia vide*. *Referes ergo hæc et nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori*. Virg. i. e. *refer et ito*. But it is to be remarked that none of these are proper Imperatives; for to the first is understood, *oro, rogo, peto*, or the like with *ut*; as also to the second, with *ut* understood, or *ne* expressed; and the third is only a command by consequence, because of the authority, influence or power of the speaker. For which reason, and to keep the moods from interfering one with another, we have excluded these from the Imperative: though the common rudiments take in the first, and Alvarus the second and third. However, it is observable, that we show most civility and respect when we use the Subjunctive, and most authority by the future of the Indicative, and *not* of the Imperative: which last is the ordinary strain in which laws are delivered. But this rule is not always followed.

16. The *ris* of the second person passive is more usual than *re*; and *erunt* of the perfect of the Indicative active than *ere*; especially in prose, in which, if a vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. REMARKS UPON ENGLISH VERBS.

1. An English Verb hath only two tenses, distinguished by different terminations, and both in the active voice, viz. the present and preterite. The present is the Verb itself, and the preterite is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *fill, filled*; *love, loved*.

2. All the other parts of the active, and the whole passive is made up of the auxiliary Verbs, *do, have, shall, will, may,*

can, and *am* ; as in page 42, and in the example, *to love*, page 43, &c.

3. An English Verb hath different terminations for the persons of the singular number. The present hath three or four. The first person is the Verb itself ; the second ends in *est* or *st* ; the third in *eth*, *es*, or *s*. The preterite hath only two ; the first commonly ending in *ed*, and the second in *est*, or *st* : but the third person singular of the preterite, and all the persons plural, both of it and the present, cannot otherwise be distinguished than by the nominative before them ; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the Latin.

4. We have two participles, the present ending always in *ing*, and the preterite, ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many irregular English Verbs ; but it is to be noted, 1. That that irregularity relates only to the termination of the preterite tense, and the passive participle. 2. That it reaches only such words as are native and originally English. 3. That it is to be found only in words of one syllable, or derived from words of one syllable. 4. That where the preterite is irregular, the passive participle is the same with it. Except *hewed*, *mowed*, *showed*, *snowed*, *sowed* ; which have *hewn*, *mown*, *shown*, *snown*, *sown*.

6. These irregularities may be reduced to the following heads :

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c*, *ch*, *sh*, *f*, *k*, *p*, *x* ; and after *s* and *th* when pronounced hard ; and sometimes after *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* ; when a short vowel goes before it, as, *plac't*, *snatch't*, *fish't*, *walk't*, *dwelt*, *smelt*. But when a long vowel goes before *p*, it is either shortened, or changed into a short one ; as, *kept*, *slept*, *wept*, *crept*, *swept*, *leapt*, from *keep*, *sleep*, *weep*, *creep*, *sweep*, *leap* ; as also sometimes before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *v* turned into *f* ; as, *feel*, *felt* ; *dream*, *dreamt* ; *mean*, *meant* ; *leave*, *left*.

(2.) When the present ends in *d* or *t*, the preterite is sometimes the same with it ; as, *read*, *cast*, *hurt*, *burst*, *hit*, *quit* ; and when two vowels precede, the last is left out ; as, *spread*, *spreed* ; *lead*, *led* ; *feed*, *fed* ; *bleed*, *bled* ; *meet*, *met*. When a consonant comes before *d*, it is sometimes changed into *t* ; as, *bend*, *bent* ; *lend*, *lent* ; *send*, *sent* ; *rend*, *rent* ; *gird*, *girt*.

(3.) Most of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following lists.

I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Passive the same.

Awake, awoke.	Find, found.	Pay, paid.	Sting, stung.
Abide, abode.	Flee, fled.	Say, said.	Swing, swung.
Beseech, besought.	Fling, flung.	Seek, sought.	Swim, swum.
Bind, bound.	Grind, ground.	Sell, sold.	Teach, taught.
Bring, brought.	Gild, gilt.	Sit, sat.	Tell, told.
Buy, bought.	Hang, hung.	Shine, shone.	Think, thought.
Catch, caught.	Hear, heard.	Spin, spun.	Work, wrought.
Dig, dug.	Lay, laid.	Spring, sprung.	Win, won.
Drink, drunk.	Lose, lost.	Stand, stood.	Wind, wound.
Fight, fought.	Make, made.	Stick, stuck.	Wring, wrung.

II. Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,

Bear, bore, born.	Freeze, froze, frozen.	Shrink, shrank, shrunk
Begin, began, begun.	Get, got, gotten.	Sink, sank, sunk.
Bid, bade, bidden.	Give, gave, given.	Slay, slew, slain.
Beat, beat, beaten.	Go, went, gone.	Slide, slid, slidened.
Bite, bit, bitten.	Grow, grew, grown.	Smite, smote, smitten.
Blew, blew, blown.	Hew, hewed, hewn.	Strike, struck, stricken.
Child, chid, chidden.	Hide, hid, hidden.	Speak, spoke, spoken.
Choose, chose, chosen.	Hold, held, holden.	Spit, spat, spitten.
Cleave, clove, cleft.	Know, knew, known.	Strive, strove, striven.
Come, came, come.	Lie, lay, lain.	Swear, swore, sworn.
Crow, crew, crowed.	Ride, rode, ridden.	Swell, swelled, swollen.
Dare, durst, dared.	Ring, rang, rung.	Take, took, taken.
Do, did, done.	Rise, rose, risen.	Tear, tore, torn.
Draw, drew, drawn.	Run, ran, ran.	Thrive, thrived, thriven.
Drive, drove, driven.	See, saw, seen.	Throw, threw, thrown.
Eat, eat, eaten.	Seethe, sod, sodden.	Tread, trode, trodden.
Fall, fell, fallen.	Shake, shook, shaken.	Wear, wore, worn.
Fly, flew, flown.	Shear, shored, shorn.	Weave, wove, woven.
Forstake, forsook, forsaken.	Shoot, shot, shotten.	Write, wrote, written.

These preterites, *bare, share, sware, tare, ware, clave, gat, begat, forgat, brake, spake, slang, sprang, swang, wan, stank, sank*, are seldom used. But *beseech'd, catch'd, work'd, digged, gilded, girded, hang'd, swam, writ*, for *besought, caught, &c.* are frequently to be met with.

NOTE 1. That when the verb ends in one *consonant*, that *consonant* is for the most part doubled before *ing, ed, est, edst*, and *eth*, as *worship, worshipping, worshipped, worshippeth, worshippeth, worshippeth*; as also before *en*; as *bid, bidden*.

NOTE 2. That the Apostrophus, (which was become too common in English verbs, as *lov'd, lov'st*, for *loved, lovest*;) begins now to be disused by the most polite writers in prose; but poets still use it, though not so much as formerly.

NOTE 3. That the *preterite active*, and the *participle passive* (when one word serves for both) are thus distinguished; when

it hath nothing before it but the nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *preterite active*; but when it hath any part of the helping verb *AM*, it is the *participle passive*.

Except *come*; *gone*, *run*, *set*, *risen*, *fallen*, *grown*, *withered*, and such like intransitive verbs, which have frequently the *passive signs* *AM*, *ART*, &c. instead of *HAVE* in the *perfect* tense; and *WAS*, *WAST*, &c. instead of *HAD* in the *pluperfect*; as, *veni*, I am come; *veneram*, I was come.

NOTE 4. That though the Latin *perfect* frequently answers both to *HAVE* and *DID* (or the *preterite* termination *ED*, &c. yet they seem to be thus distinguished: *DID* or *ED*, &c. respects a certain past time, in which the thing was finished, or a finishing; as, *I wrote*, or *did write yesterday*; *HAVE* either speaks of a thing as but just now past, or at least does not refer to any particular time that it happened at; as, *I have written my letter*, i. e. just now; *I have read of Julius Cæsar*, i. e. some time or other. The first of these is called the *preter-perfect definite*, and the other the *preter-perfect indefinite*.

NOTE 5. That *SHALL* and *WILL*, by Mr. Brightland, are thus distinguished.

In the first person simply *SHALL* foretells;

In *WILL* a threat, or else a promise dwells.

SHALL in the second and the third does threa.

WILL simply then foretells the future feat

By Mr. Turner thus,

WILL imports the *will* or *purpose* of the person it is joined with; *SHALL* implies the will of another, who *promises* or *threatens* to do the thing, or causes it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De formatione verborum.

Quatuor sunt terminationes verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; viz. *o* præsentis, *i* præteriti, *am* supini, et *re* infinitivi, hoc modo;

1. Ab *o* formantur *am* et *em*.
2. Ab *i* formantur *ram*, *rim*, *o*, *sæc*, et *sæem*.

Of the formation of verbs.

There are four terminations of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely *o* of the present, *i* of the preterite, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive, after this manner.

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*, *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sæc*, and *sæem*.

3. Ab *um* formantur *u, us, et rus*.

4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe, *bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do*.

3. *U, us, and rus* are formed from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re do* come; *as, bam, bo, rem, a, e, and i, ns and dus, dum, do and di*.

In every complete Verb there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS, viz. the present of the Indicative in *o*, the preterite or perfect in *i*, the first supine in *um*, and the present of the Infinitive in *re*. The first (which is therefore called the **THEME** or root of the Verb) gives origin to the whole Verb, either mediately or immediately. The preterite, the first supine, and the present of the Infinitive, come from it immediately, and all the rest from them; except the future of the Indicative in *am*, and the present of the Subjunctive in *em* or *am*, which by this scheme are also formed immediately from the present in *o*.

It is to be noted, that the preterites and supines of the first conjugation end commonly in *avi* and *ctum*, of the second in *ui* and *itum*, and of the fourth in *ivi* and *itum*. But the third conjugation cannot be reduced to any regular rule, and there are a great many exceptions in the other three, which are therefore to be learned by daily practice, till the scholar is advanced to that part of Grammar that treats particularly of them.

But the present of the Infinitive, and all the other parts of the Verb, are regularly formed after one fixed and uniform manner.

In the foregoing rules of formation, I have for the ease of the memory, put the terminations instead of the moods and tenses, but for the greater plainness they may be thus expressed.

I. From the present of the Indicative are formed the future of the Indicative of the third and fourth conjugations in *am*, and the present of the Subjunctive of the first in *em*, and of the other three in *a.a.*

II. From the perfect of the Indicative are formed the pluperfect of it, the perfect, pluperfect, and future of the Subjunctive, and the perfect of the Infinitive.

III. From the first supine are formed the last supine, the participle perfect, and the future active.

IV. From the present of the Infinitive are formed the Imperfect of the Indicative, the future of the same when it ends in *bo*, (viz. in the first and second conjugations,) the Imperfect of the Subjunctive, the Imperative, the participles present and future passive, and the gerunds.

NOTE 1. That Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation retain *i* before *unt, unto, eban, am, ens, endus, endum*; but lose it in the present of the Infinitive, and imperfect of the Subjunctive.

NOTE 2. That the last person plural of the imperative may be formed by adding *o* to the same person of the present of the Indicative; as, *amant, amanto*; *docent, docento*.

NOTE 3. That the passive voice is formed from the same tenses of the active, (except where *sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE 4. That, the present of the Infinitive passive of the third conjugation may be formed by taking *s* from the second person of the present of the Indicative active; as, *legis, legi*; or, when the Verb is deponent, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *proficiam, proficiamur*; *mori, mori*.

NOTE 5. That the present of the Infinitive active, and the second person of the Indicative and Imperative passive in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE 6. That the second person plural of the present of the Indicative, and of the Imperative, are the same in the passive voice.

NOTE 7. That where any of the principal parts are wanting, those parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which reason grammarians give supines to a great many Verbs, which are yet not to be found in any author, because the participles, formed from them are found: and they suppose likewise all deponent Verbs of old to have had the active voice, and consequently supines, though now lost.

NOTE 8. That all Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the fourth in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are eight verbs in *eo* of the first conjugation, viz. *beo, creo, screeo, meo, calceo, laqueo, nauseo, nucleo*. There are twenty-four in *io* of the first, viz. *amplio, basio, brevio, concilio, crucio, furio, glacio, hio, lanio, luxurio, macio, nuncio, pio, propitio, radio, repudio, satio, saucio, socio, somnio, spolio, suavio*, or rather *suavior, vario, vitio*; with some others less common, as, *decurio, succenturio, fascio, retaliio, strio, tertio, &c.* and twelve of the third, viz. *capio, facio, jacio, lacio, specio, fodio, fugio, cupio, rapio, sapio, pario, quatio*, with their compounds.

It is not, in my opinion, necessary to trouble the learner with a particular account how the respective changes in the moods, tenses, numbers and persons are made; they being obvious from the examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the body, or essential part of the Verb, by a division or hyphen. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular

rule, might be a sufficient direction. For to conjugate one verb by the example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the Essential part of the one (which is all that stands before *o*, *eo*, or *io*, of the present of the Indicative) to substitute the Essential part of the other, and then to add to it the additional syllables it receives in conjugation as before. Only we are to advert, 1. That in the preterites and supines and the parts that come from them, we are to reckon all before *i* and *um* for the body of the verb, adding the usual syllables to it, as in the Active voice of *lego*. 2. In verbs in *io* we are to retain or omit the *i*, as in Note 1.

There is yet another way of the formation of verbs, differing only from the first method in this, that what parts according to it are formed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the first or second person of the present of the Indicative. But though this may be the more natural way, yet the other is more easy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.

Irregularia Verba vulgò recensentur octo, viz. *sum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, et fio, cum compositis.*

Of Irregular Verbs.

The Irregular Verbs are commonly reckoned eight, viz. sum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, and fio, with their compounds.

SUM.

Sum, fui, esse, To be.

INDICATIVUS.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præsens.

Sum,	<i>I am,</i>
Es,	<i>Thou art,</i>
Est :	<i>He is :</i>
Sumus,	<i>We are,</i>
Estis,	<i>Ye are,</i>
Sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

Sim,	<i>I may or can be,</i>
Sis,	<i>Thou mayst or canst be,</i>
Sit :	<i>He may or can be .</i>
Simus,	<i>We may or can be,</i>
Sitis,	<i>Ye may or can be,</i>
Sint.	<i>They may or can be.</i>

Imperfectum.

Eram,	<i>I was,</i>
Eras,	<i>Thou wast,</i>
Erat :	<i>He was :</i>
Eramus,	<i>We were,</i>
Eratis,	<i>Ye were,</i>
Erant,	<i>They were.</i>

Essem,	<i>I might, &c. be,</i>
Esses,	<i>Thou mightst be,</i>
Esset :	<i>He might be :</i>
Essemus,	<i>We might be,</i>
Essetis,	<i>Ye might be,</i>
Essent.	<i>They might be.</i>

Perfectum.

Fui,	<i>I have been,</i>	Fuërim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
Fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>	Fueris,	<i>Thou mayst have been,</i>
Fuit :	<i>He hath been :</i>	Fuerit :	<i>He may have been :</i>
Fuimus,	<i>We have been,</i>	Fuërimus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
Fuistis,	<i>Ye have been,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
Fuerunt,	<i>They have been.</i>	Fuerint.	<i>They may have been.</i>

vel -ero-

Plusquam-perfectum.

Fuëram,	<i>I had been,</i>	Fuissem,	<i>I might have been,</i>
Fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>	Fuisset,	<i>Thou mightst have been,</i>
Fuerat ;	<i>He had been ;</i>	Fuisset ;	<i>He might have been ;</i>
Fuëramus	<i>We had been,</i>	Fuissemus,	<i>We might have been,</i>
Fueratis,	<i>Ye had been,</i>	Fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have been,</i>
Fuerant.	<i>They had been.</i>	Fuisent.	<i>They might have been.</i>

Futurum.

Ero,	<i>I shall or will be,</i>	Fuëro,	<i>I shall have been,</i>
Eris,	<i>Thou shalt or will be,</i>	Fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been,</i>
Erit ;	<i>He shall or will be ;</i>	Fuerit ;	<i>He shall have been ;</i>
Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be,</i>	Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been,</i>
Eritis,	<i>Ye shall or will be,</i>	Fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been,</i>
Eerunt.	<i>They shall or will be.</i>	Fuerint.	<i>They shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

Præsen.	{	Es vel	} <i>Be thou.</i>
		Esto,	
	{	Esto ;	} <i>Let him be ;</i>
		Este vel	
		Estôte,	
{	Sunto,	} <i>Be ye.</i>	
	Sunto,		
			<i>Let them be ;</i>

Præs.	Este,	} <i>To be.</i>
Perf.	Fuisse,	
Fut.	Futurus,	} <i>To have been.</i>
	esse vel Fuisse,	
PARTICIPIIUM.		
Fut.	Futurus,	<i>About to be</i>

The compounds of *sum* are, *adsum*, *absum*, *desum*, *intersum*, *præsum*, *obsum*, *subsum*, *supersum*, *insum*, *prosum*, and *possum*. The first eight are conjugated as the simple *sum* ; *insum* wants the preterite and its descendants ; for we do not use *infui*, *infuisti*, *infueram*, &c.

¶ **PROSUM**, *To do good*, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e* ; as,
END. } *Pr.* Pro-sum, prod-es,-est; pro-sūmus, prod-estis, pro-sunt.
 } *Im.* Prod-ëran, prod-eras, prod-erat ; prod-erāmus, &c.
SUB. *Im.* Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset ; prod-essemus, &c.
IMPER. Prod-esto, prod-este. **INFIN.** *Præs.* Prod-esse.

POSSUM should be *pot-sum* (as being compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum* ;) but for the better sound *t* is changed into *s* before another *s*, and retained before any other letter ; and for

the same reason, *s* is always taken away. *Possēs* and *posse* are contracted for *potēssem*, *potesse*, which yet are to be found in some old authors; thus,

¶ Possum, potui, posse, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Possum, potes, potest: possūmus, potestis, possunt
Im. Potēram, poteras, poterat: poterāmus, poterātis, poterant.
Perf. Potui, potuisti, potuit: potuimus, potuistis, potuerunt *v. vere*
Plus. Potuēram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.
Fut. Potēro, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Possim, possis, possit: possīmus, possitis, possint
Imp. Possem, posses, posset: possēmus, possētis, possent.
Perf. Potuerim, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.
Plus. Potuissem, potuisses, potuisset: potuissemus, potuissetis, potuissent.
Fut. Potuero, potueris, potuerit: potuerimus, potueritis, potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Posse.

Per. Potuisse.

The rest wanting.

EO.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præs. Eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.
Imp. Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.
Perf. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, *v. ivere.*
Plus. Ivēram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.
Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præs. Eam, eas, eat; eāmus, eatis, eant.
Imp. Irem, ires, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.
Perf. Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.
Plus. Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.
Fut. Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præs. { i, ito; } { ite, eunto, }
 { ito, ito; } { itote, }

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Ire.
Perf. Ivisse.
Fut. Iturus esse *v. fuisse.*

PARTICIPA.

Præs. Iens, Gen. euntis.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.

SUPINA.

1. Itum.
 2. Itu.

GERUNDIA.

Eundum.
 Eandi.
 Eundo.

NOTE 1. That in general *eo* is a Verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE 2. That of old Verbs of the fourth had their imperfect in *ibam* and future in *ibo*, of which there are many examples in Plautus and Terence, and some in Virgil and Horace.

After the same manner the compounds of *eo* are conjugated, viz. *adeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, subeo, pereo, coëo, ineo, præëo, anteëo prodeo, prætereo, transeo; adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum, &c.* But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the fourth conjugation.

NOTE 3. That in the compounds, *ivi, ivisti, &c.* are seldom used, but they are contracted into *ii, iisti*; as, *adii, adiisti*, and sometimes *adisti*:—So *adieram, adierim, &c.*

Queo, I can, and Nequeo, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; they only want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are scarcely in use.

VOLO.

Volo, volui, velle, To will, or be willing.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Volo, vis, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.
Im. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Pr. Volui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, v. uere.
Pl. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Volam, voles, volet; volumus, voletis, volent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint,
Im. Vellem, velles, vellet; vellemus, velletis, vellent.
Pr. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pl. Vol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint,

INFINITIVUS.

Præs. Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse.

PARTICIPIUM.

Præs. Volens.

The rest wanting.

NOLO.

Nolo, nolui, nolle, To be unwilling.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Nolo, non-vis, non-vult; nol-umus, non-vultis, nolunt
Im. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant

Per. Nol-ui, -uisiti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pl. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant
Fut. Nolam, noles, nolet; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Nolim, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
Im. Nollem, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nolent.
Per. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pl. Nol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisissent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

INFINITIVUS.

PARTICIPIUM.

Pr.	} Noli, } Nolito,	} nolite, } nolitote.	Pr. Nolle. Per. Noluisse.	Pr. Nolens.

MALO.

Malo, malui malle, *To be more willing.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, *v.* -uere.
Pl. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Malam, -es, -et, &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.
Im. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pl. Mal-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uisissent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Malle.

Per. Maluisse.

NOTE. That *volo*, *nolo*, and *malo*, retain something of the third conjugation, for *vis*, *vult*, *vultis*, are contracted of *volis*, *volit*, *voliti*; and *o* is changed into *u*, for of old they said *volis*, *volitis*.

Nolo is compounded of *non volo*, and *malo* of *magis volo*.

FERO.

VOX ACTIVA.

Féro, tuli, látum, ferre, *To bring or suffer.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Im. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, *v. -ere.*
Pl. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pl. Tul-issem, -isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
Fut. Tul-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. { Fer, fert; } { ferte, ferunto. }

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Ferre.
Pr. Tulisse.
Fut. Laturus esse
vel fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.

Pr. Ferens.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um,

SUPINA.

1. Latum.
 2. Latu.

GERUNDIA.

Ferendum.
 Ferendi.
 Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror, latus, ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Feror, { ferris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
 { ferre,
Im. Fer-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
 { -ebare,
Per. Latus, sum *vel* sui, latus es *vel* fuisti, &c.
Pl. Latus eram *vel* fueram, latus eras *vel* fueras, &c.
Fut. Ferar. { ferēris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.
 { ferēre,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Ferar,</i>	{	<i>feraris,</i>	<i>feratur;</i>	<i>feramur,</i>	<i>feramini,</i>	<i>ferantur.</i>
			<i>ferare,</i>				
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Ferrer,</i>	{	<i>ferraris,</i>	<i>ferretur;</i>	<i>ferremur,</i>	<i>ferremini,</i>	<i>ferrentur.</i>
			<i>ferrere,</i>				
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Latus sim vel fuerim, 'atus sis vel fueris, &c.</i>						
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Latus essem vel fuisset, latus esses vel fuisset.</i>						
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.</i>						

IMPERATIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	{	<i>Ferre,</i>	<i>fertor;</i>	<i>ferimini,</i>	<i>feruntur.</i>
		<i>Fertor,</i>			

INFINITIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Ferri.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Latus esse vel fuisse.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Latum iri.</i>

PARTICIPA.

<i>Per.</i>	<i>Latus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Ferendus,</i>	<i>-a,</i>	<i>-um.</i>

NOTE. That *fero* is a Verb of the third conjugation, *fers, fert, fertis, fertis, fertis, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur*, and *feritor*.

Also *fer* is contracted of *ferē*: which in like manner has happened to the imperatives of *dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face*.

The compounds of *fero* are conjugated the same way as the simple; as, *affero, attūli, allātum; aufero, abstūli, ablātum; differo, distūli, dilātum; confero, contuli, collātum; infero, intuli, illātum; offero, obtuli, oblatum; effero, extuli, elatum; so circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, præfero*.

FIO.

Fio, factus, fieri, To be made, or to become.

INDICATIVUS.

<i>Pr.</i>	<i>Fio,</i>	<i>fis,</i>	<i>fit;</i>	<i>finus,</i>	<i>fitis,</i>	<i>frunt.</i>
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Fiebam,</i>	<i>fiebas,</i>	<i>fiebat;</i>	<i>fiebamus,</i>	<i>fiebatis,</i>	<i>fiebant.</i>
<i>Per.</i>	<i>Factus sum vel fui, factus es vel fuisti, &c.</i>					
<i>Pl.</i>	<i>Factus eram vel fueram, factus eras vel fueras, &c.</i>					
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Fiam,</i>	<i>fies.</i>	<i>fiet;</i>	<i>fiemus,</i>	<i>fietis,</i>	<i>fient.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
Im. Fierem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Per. Factus sim *vel* fuerim, factus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Pl. Factus essem *vel* fuisset, factus esses, *vel* fuissetis, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, factus, fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr. { Fi, * fito; } { fite, } fiunto.
 { Fito, fito; } { fitote, }

INFINITIVUS.

Pr. Fieri.
Per. Factus esse *vel* fuisse
Fut. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

SUPINUM.

Factu.

NOTE 1. That *fio* is the passive of *facio*, to make, (which is regular) instead of *facior*, which is not in use: yet the compounds of *facio*, which change *a* into *i* are regular; as, *afficior*, *affectus*, *affici*; *perficior*, *perfectus*, *perfici*.

NOTE 2. That the compounds of *facio*, with verbs, nouns or adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their imperative active *fac*, and their passive form (when used) *fio*; as, *calefacio*, *lucrifacio*, *benefacio*; *calefac*, *calefio*, &c. But those compounded with a preposition change the *a* into *i*, and have *fice* and *ficior*. There are some compounded of *facio* and a noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the first conjugation; as *magnifico*, *significo*.

To the irregular Verbs may be reduced *edo*, to eat; which in some of its parts falls in with the Verb *sum*; thus,

IND. *Præs.* Edo, es, est; - - - estis, - - -
 SUB. *Imp.* Essem, esses, esset; essemus, essetis, essent.
 IMP. *Præs.* Es *vel* esto, - - - este *vel* estote.
 INFIN. Esse.

Likewise its compounds, *comedo*, *comes*, *comest*, &c. and *exedo*, *exes*, *exest*, &c. But all these may likewise be regularly conjugated, *edo*, *edis*, *edit*, &c. *ederem*, *ederes*, *ederet*, &c.

* Though *fi* is rejected by some grammarians of great note, yet we have given it a place here, not only because it is to be found in Plautus, but also in Horace, Lib. 2. Sat. 5. ver. 33. *Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best manuscripts and editions.

OF DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Though some of the Irregular Verbs already mentioned, want some of their parts, and upon that account may be called also Defective Verbs, yet by Defective Verbs here we chiefly understand such as want considerable branches, or are used only in few tenses and persons. We shall set down those that most frequently occur.

I. Aio, *I say*; Inquam, *I say*; Forem, *I should be*; Ausim, *I dare*; Faxim, *I'll see to it, or I will do it*; Ave and Salve, *God save you, hail, good-morrow*; Cedo, *tell or give me*; Quæso, *I pray*.

IND.	{	Præs. Aio, ais, ait; aiunt
		Imp. Ai-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
		Perf. aias,
SUB.	Præs. aisti, ajāt; aiatis, aiant.	

IMPERAT. ai.

[PARTICIP. Præs. aiens.]

INDIC.	{	Præs. Inquam, inquis, inquit; inquitus, inquitis, inquit.
		Imp. inquebat; inquebant.
		Perf. inquisti,
		Fut. inquires, inquiet;

IMPERAT. inque, -ito.

PARTICIP. Præs. inquiens.

SUB.	{	Imp. } Forem, fores, foret; foremus, foretis, forent.
	{	Plus. }

INF. Fore, *to be, or to be about to be, the same with futurus esse.*

SUB.	{	Præs. Ausim, ausis, ausit;
		Perf. Faxim, faxis, faxit; faxint.
		Fut. Faxo, faxis, faxit; faxitis, faxint.

NOTE. That *faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPER.	{	Ave, } avête, } }	} INFIN. {	} avère.	
		Avête, } avetote, } }			} salvère.
		Salve, } salvête, } }			
		Salvête, } salvetote, } }			
		Cedo, } cedite, } }			

INDIC. Præs. Quæso, quæsumus.

II. These three verbs, *odi*, *memini*, *cæpi*, have only the preterite tense, and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called Preteritive verbs; thus,

Odi,	oderam,	oderam,	odissem,	odero,	odisse.
Memini,	memineram,	meminerim,	meminissam,	meminero,	meminisse.
Cæpi,	cæperam,	cæperim,	cæpissam,	cæpero,	cæpisse.

But under these they comprehend also the significations of the other tenses ; as, *memini*, I remember, or I have remembered ; *memineram*, I remembered, or I had remembered, &c. So *odî*, I hate, or I have hated ; *cœpi*, I begin, or I have begun. Though I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any example where *cœpi* doth clearly signify the present tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative *memento*, remember thou ; *mementote*, remember ye. Some add *meminens*, remembering, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add *novi*, because it frequently hath the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as *I have known* ; though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

NOTE 1. That *odientes* is to be found in Petronius ; *odiatur* in Seneca ; *cœpio* in Plautus and Terence.—See Voss. Analog. Lib. III. Cap. 39.

NOTE 2. That the participles *cœptus* and *œsus*, with its compounds *perœsus*, *exœsus*, are in use among the best authors ; but *perœdi* and *exœdi* are not.

III. *Faris*, to speak, wants the first person of the present indicative, and perhaps the whole present of the subjunctive, for we do not say *for* or *fer*, and rarely *feris*, *fertur*, &c. So likewise *daris* and *deris*, but not *dor* or *der*, to be given. The compounds of the first, as, *effor*, *affor*, are rare ; but the compounds of the other, as, *addor*, *reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other defective verbs are but single words and rarely to be found but among poets ; as, *infit*, he begins ; *desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb with the conjunction *si* ; as, *sis* for *si vis*, if thou wilt ; *sultis*, for *si vultis*, if ye will ; *sodes*, for *si audes*, if thou darest.

OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

These are also a kind of defective verbs, which for the most part are used only in the third person singular. They have the sign *it* before them in English ; as, *pœnit*, it repents ; *placet*, it pleases ; and are thus conjugated :

	<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquam.</i>	<i>Futur.</i>
IND.	<i>Pœnit</i> ,	<i>pœnitebat</i> ,	<i>pœnituit</i> ,	<i>pœnituerat</i> ,	<i>pœnitebit</i> .
SUB.	<i>Pœniteat</i> ,	<i>pœniteret</i> ,	<i>pœnituerit</i> ,	<i>pœnituisset</i> ,	<i>pœnituerit</i> .
INF.	<i>Pœnitere</i> ,	- - -	<i>pœnituisse</i> .		

Most verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially such as otherwise have no passive ; as,

<i>Præs.</i>	<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Plusquam.</i>	<i>Futur.</i>
<i>Ind.</i> Pugnatur, pugnabatur, pugnatum			{ est, fuit, -atum	{ erat, fuerat, pugnabitur
<i>Sub.</i> Pugnaretur, pugnaretur, pugnatum			{ sit, fuerit, -atum	{ esset, fuisset, -atum fuerit.
<i>Inf.</i> Pugnari, - - - - pugnatum			{ esse, fuisse, . .	{ pugnatum iri.

NOTE 1. That Impersonals are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals in the cases which they govern; as, *pœnitēt me, te, illum*, I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *ego pœniteo*, &c. which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *Pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE 2. That impersonals are not used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive.

NOTE 3. That impersonal verbs are very often used personally, especially in the plural number; as, *accidit, contingit, evēnit, pertinet, decet, dolet, licet, nocet, patet, placet, præstat, &c.* For we say, *tu mihi sola places; nulli noceo; mul homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; parvum parva decent, &c.* But it is to be remarked, that they are generally impersonal, when an infinitive or subjunctive mood follows; for though I can say, *tu places mihi*, yet I cannot say, *si places audire*, but *si placet tibi audire*. Again, we cannot say *ego contigi esse domi*, but *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*. Likewise *evēnit illum mori*, or *ut ille moreretur*; but not *ille evenit mori*.

[I shall not here inquire what is the word understood to impersonal verbs, whether it is a noun of the like signification; as, *pugna, pugnatur*, or the word *res* or *negotium*, or the infinitive mood. Though I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the nature of the verb and good sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the word understood can never be a person properly so called, but a thing; for which reason, and the want of the two primary persons, viz. the first and second, they are called impersonal, though some are much offended with the name.]

CAP. IV.

De Participio.

Tria sunt præcipuè consideranda in participio, viz. *tempus*, *significatio* et *declinatio*.

I. Tempora participiorum sunt tria *præsens*, *præteritum* et *futurum*.

Particip.	{	Præ.	{	Temp. designant in	{	ns.
		Præter.				tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.				rus, dus.

II. Significatio participiorum est vel *activa* vel *passiva*, vel *neutra*, ad modum verborum à quibus descendunt.

Participia	{	in ns, et rus plerumque sunt <i>Activa</i> .
		in dus semper <i>Passiva</i> .
		in tus, sus, xus, plerumque sunt <i>Passiva</i> , interdum verò <i>Activa</i> , vel etiam <i>Communia</i> .

III. Omnia participia sunt adjectiva : quæ desinunt in ns sunt *tertiæ declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *primæ* et *secundæ*.

CHAP. IV.

Of Participle.

There are three things especially to be considered in a participle, viz. time, signification and declension.

I. The tenses of participles are three, the present, preterite and future.

Particip. of the	{	Pres.	{	Tense end in	{	ns.
		Præter.				tus, sus, xus.
		Fut.				rus, dus.

II. The signification of participles is either active or passive, or neuter, after the manner of the verbs from which they come.

Participles	{	in ns and rus are generally <i>Active</i> .
		in dus always <i>Passive</i> .
		in tus, sus, xus, are generally <i>Passive</i> , sometimes <i>Active</i> , or also <i>Common</i> .

III. All participles are adjectives : those which end in ns are of the third declension, but all the rest are of the first and second.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which as its signification always imports some time.

It is so called, because it partakes of a noun and a verb, having genders and cases from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both.

1. Active verbs [See Chap. IX.] have two participles, one of the present time ending in ns ; as, *amans*, loving : and another of the future ending in rus ; as, *amaturus*, about to love.

2. Passive verbs have likewise two participles, one of the preterite ending in tus, sus, or xus ; as, *amatus*, loved ; *visus*,

seen; *flexus*, bowed, (to which some add one in *uus*, viz. *mortuus*, dead:) and another of the future ending in *du*; as, *amandus*, to be loved.

3. Neuter verbs have two participles, as the active; as, *sedens*, sitting; *sessurus*, about to sit.

4. Active intransitive verbs have frequently three participles; as, *carens*, wanting, *cariturus*, about to want, *carendus* to be wanted; *dolens*, grieving; *doliturus*, about to grieve; *dolendus*, to be grieved: and sometimes four; as, *vigilans*, watching; *vigilaturus*, about to watch; *vigilatus*, watched; *vigilandus*, to be watched.

5. Deponent and common verbs have generally four participles; as, *loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken; *dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, or being vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed.

NOTE 1. That in some deponent verbs the participle perfect hath both an active and passive signification, though that of the verb itself is only active; as, *testatus*, having testified, or being testified. So *mentitus*, *meditatus*, *oblitus*, &c.

NOTE 2. That it is essential to a participle, 1. That it come immediately from a verb. 2. That in its signification it also include time. Therefore *tunicatus*, coated; *larvatus*, masked, and such like, are not participles, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs. And *ignarus*, ignorant; *elegans*, neat; *circumspectus*, circumspect; *tacitus*, silent; *falsus*, false; *profusus*, prodigal, &c. and not participles, because they do not signify time.

There are a kind of adjective nouns ending in *undus*, which approach very near to the nature of participles, such as *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*. They are formed from the imperf. of the indic. and the signification is much the same with the participle of the present time; only they signify abundance, or a great deal of the action, according to A. Gellius, Lib. XI. Cap. 15. or according to others, they signify the same with the participles of frequentative verbs, when these are not in use. See Gronovius on Gellius, as above cited.

APPENDIX OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

Gerunds and Supines (which because of their near relation to verbs, are by some not improperly called participial words) are a sort of substantive nouns, expressing the action of the verb in general, or in the abstract. Gerunds are substantives of the second declension, and complete in all their cases except the vocative. Supines are substantives of the fourth declension, having only two cases, the accusative in *um*, which makes the first supine, and the ablative in *u*, which makes the second.

[Vossius, Lib. 8. Cap. 54. thinks that the last supine may sometimes be a dative; as, *durum tactu*, i. e. *tactui*; for the datives of the fourth declension of old ended in *u*. Also Lib. 7. Cap. 8. he takes notice that though these supines have sometimes other cases, (as *irrisui esse*) yet they are only reckoned supines by grammarians when the first come after verbs of motion, and the second after adjective nouns: thus *dignus irrisu* is a supine (according to them) *non sine irrisu audientium*, is not.]

*De Indeclinabilibus Partibus
Orationis.*

CAP. V.

De Adverbio.

In adverbio potissimum spectanda est ejus significatio.

Adverbiorum significationes variae sunt; earum verò præcipuæ adsequentia capita revocari possant.

Of the Indeclinable Parts of
Speech.

CHAP. V.

Of Adverb.

In an adverb is chiefly to be considered its signification.

The signification of adverbs are various: but the chief of them may be reduced to the following heads.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, which being joined to a noun, verb, or other adverb, expresses some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

I. Adverbs denoting circumstance, are chiefly those of place, time, and order.

1. Adverbs of PLACE are five-fold, viz. Adverbs signifying (1)

Motion (or rest) in a place.

Ubi ?	Where ?
Hic,	Here.
Illic,	} There.
Istic,	
Ibi,	Within.
Intra,	Without.
Foris,	Every where.
Ubique,	No where.
Nusquam,	Some where.
Alicubi,	Else where.
Alibi,	Any where.
Ubivis,	In the same place.
Ibidem,	

(2) to a place.

Quo ?	Whither ?
Huc,	Hither.
Ilhuc,	} Thither.
Isthuc,	
Intro,	Within.
Foras,	Without.
Eo,	To that place.
Alio,	To another place.
Aliquo,	To some place.
Eodem,	To the same place.

(3) towards a place

Quorsum ?	Whitherso ?
Versus,	Towards.
Horsum,	Hitherward.
Horsum,	Thitherward.
Sorsum,	Upward.
Deorsum,	Downward.
Antrosum,	Forward.
Retrosum,	Backward.
Dextrosum,	To the right hand.
Sinistrosum,	To the left hand.

(4) from a place.

Unde ?	From whence ?
Hinc,	From hence.
Ilhinc,	} From thence.
Isthinc,	
Inde,	From elsewhere.
Aliunde,	From some place.
Alicunde,	If from any place.
Sicunde,	On both sides.
Utrinque,	From above.
Superne,	From below.
Inferne,	From Heaven.
Cœlitus,	From the ground.
Funditus,	

(5) through or by a place.

Qua ?	Which way ?
Hac,	This way.
Ilhac,	} That way.
Isthac,	
Alia,	Another way

2. Adverbs of TIME are three-fold, viz. Such as signify, [1] Being in Time, either.

1 Present.

Nunc,	Now.
Hodie,	To-day.

2 Past.

Tunc,	} Then.
Tum,	
Heri,	Yesterday.
Dudum,	} Heretofore.
Pridem,	
Pridie,	The day before.
Nudius Tertius,	Three days ago.
Nuper,	Lately.

3 Future remote. very near.

Jamjam,	Presently.
Mox,	Immediately.
Statim,	By and by.
Præstatim,	Instantly.
Illico,	Straightway.

4 Indefinite.

Cras,	To-morrow.
Postridie,	The day after.
Perendie,	Two days hence.
Nondum,	Not yet.

5 Indefinite.

Quando ?	When ?
Aliquando,	} Sometimes
Nonnunquam,	
Interdum,	Ever.
Semper,	Never.
Nunquam,	In the mean time
Interim,	Daily.
Quotidie,	

[2] Continuance of Time.

Quamdiu ?	How long
Diu,	Long.
Tramdiu ?	So long ?
Jamdiu,	} Long ago
Jamdudum,	
Jampridem,	

[3] Vicissitude or Repetition of Time

1 Indefinite.

Quoties ?	How often ?
Sæpe,	Often.
Raro,	Seldom.
Toties,	So often.
Aliquoties,	For several times
Vicissim,	} By turns.
Alternatim,	
Morsus,	Again.
Iterum,	} Ever and anon.
Subinde,	
Identidem,	

Definite Number.

Semel,	Once
Bis,	Twice
Ter,	Thrice
Quater,	Four times, &c

3. Adverbs of ORDER: *et*,

<i>Inde,</i>	<i>Then.</i>	<i>Deinceps,</i>	<i>So forth</i>	<i>Primò,</i>	<i>-um, First.</i>
<i>Deinde,</i>	<i>Thereafter.</i>	<i>Denuo,</i>	<i>Of new.</i>	<i>Secundò,</i>	<i>-um, Secondly.</i>
<i>Dehinc,</i>	<i>Hence/orth.</i>	<i>Denique,</i>	<i>Finally.</i>	<i>Tertiò,</i>	<i>-um, Thirdly.</i>
<i>Porro,</i>	<i>Moreover.</i>	<i>Postremò,</i>	<i>Lastly.</i>	<i>Quartò,</i>	<i>-um, Fourthly.</i>

II. The other Adverbs expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

ABSOLUTE, denoting,

1. QUALITY simply; *as, bene, well; male, ill; fortiter, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.*
2. CERTAINTY; *as, profectò, certè, sanè, planè, nè, utique, ita, etiam, truly, verily, yes; quidni? why not? omninò, certainly.*
3. CONTINGENCE; *as, fortè, forsan, fortassis, fors, happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*
4. NEGATION; *as, non, haud, not; nequaquam, not at all; neutquam, by no means, minimè, nothing less.*
5. PROHIBITION; *as, ne, not.*
6. SWEARING; *as, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.*
7. EXPLAINING; *as, utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, to wit, namely.*
8. SEPARATION; *as, Seorsum, apart; separatim, separately; sigillatim, one by one; viritum, man by man; oppidatim, town by town, &c.*
9. JOINING TOGETHER; *as, simul, unà, pariter, together; generaliter, generally, universaliter, universally; plerumque, for the most part.*
10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; *as, en, ecce, lo, behold.*
11. INTERROGATION; *as, cur, quare, quomobrem? why, wherefore? num, an? whether? quomodo, qui? how? to which add, ubi, quò, quorsum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.*

COMPARATIVE, denoting,

1. EXCESS; *as, valdè, maximè, magnopere, summo opere, admodum, oppidò, perquam, longè, very much, exceedingly; nimis, nimium, too much; prorsus, penitus, omninò, altogether, wholly; magis, more, melius, better; pejùs, worse; fortius, more bravely; and optimè, best; pessimè, worst; fortissimè, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.*
2. DEFECT; *as, ferme, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, almost, parum, little; paulo, paululum, very little.*
3. PREFERENCE; *as, potius, satius, rather; potissimum, precipuè, præsertim, chiefly, especially; imò, yes, nay, nay rather.*
4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; *as, ita, sic, adeò, so; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, as, as if; quemadmodum, even as; satis, enough; itidem, in like manner.*
5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; *as, aliter, secus, otherwise; alloqui or alioquin, else; nedum, much more or much less.*
6. ABATEMENT; *as, sensim, paulatim, pròdetentim, by degrees, piecemeal; vix, scarcely, segre, hardly; with difficulty.*
7. EXCLUSION; *as, tantum, solam, modo, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum, only.*

NOTE 1. That Adverbs seem originally to have been contrived to express compendiously in one word what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *his*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Hercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c. Therefore many of them are nothing else but *adjective nouns* or *pronouns*, having the *preposition* and *substantive* understood; as, *quò, eò, eòdem*; for *ad quæ, ea, eadem* [*locæ,*] or *cui, ei, eidem* [*loco*]; for of old these datives ended in *o*.— Thus *qua, hac, illac*, &c. are plain *adjectives* in the *abl. sing. femin.* the word *viâ*, a way, and *in* being understood. Many of them are compounds; as, *quomodo*, i. e. *quo modo*; *quemadmodum*, i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem*, i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare*, i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorsum*, i. e. *versus quem* [*locum*]; *scilicet*, i. e. *scire licet*; *videlicet*, i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet*, i. e. *ire licet*; *illico*, i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere*, i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum*, i. e. *ni* [*est*] *mirum*, &c.

NOTE 2. That of *adverbs* of *place*, those of the first kind answer to the question *ubi?* the second to *quo?* the third to *quorsum?* the fourth to *unde?* and the fifth to *qua?* to which may be added a sixth, *quousque?* how far? answered by *usque*, until; *hucusque*, hitherto; *eousque*, so far; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far; *eatenus*, so far as; *quadantenus*, in some measure. But these are equally applied to *place* and *time*.

NOTE 3. That *adverbs* of *time* of the first kind answer to *quando?* of the second to *quandiu* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem?* of the third to *quoties?*

NOTE 4. That *adverbs* of *quality* generally answer to the question *quomodo?*

NOTE 5. That some *adverbs* of *time*, *place*, and *order*, are frequently used the one for the other; as, *ubi*, where and when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, thereafter, next; *hactenus*, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order &c. Other *adverbs* also may be classed under different heads.

NOTE 6. That some *adverbs* of *time* are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, sometime hereafter.

NOTE 7. That *interrogative adverbs* of *time* and *place* doubled, or with the adjection *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *soever*, as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquo*, or *quocunque*, whithersoever, &c. And the same holds also in other *interrogative* words; as *quisquis*, or *quicunque*, whosoever; *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quan-*

tuscunque, how great soever; *qualisqualis*, or *qualiscunque*, of what kind or quality soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however, or howsoever, &c.

CAP. VI.

De Præpositione.

I. Præpositiones quæ regunt accusativum sunt viginti-octo, viz.

Ad,	To.
Apud,	At.
Ante,	Before.
Adversus,	} Against.
Adversum,	
Contra,	} On this side.
Cis,	
Citra,	
Circa,	
Circum,	} About.
Erga,	Towards.
Extra,	Without.
Inter,	Between, among.
Intra,	Within.

II. Præpositiones quæ regunt ablativum sunt quindecim; nempe.

A,	} From.
Ab,	
Abs,	} Without.
Absque,	
Cum,	With.
Clam,	Without the know- ledge of.
Coram,	Before.

III. Hæ quatuor interdum accusativum, interdum ablativum, regunt;

In,	In, unto.
Sub,	Under.

CHAP. VI.

Of Preposition.

I. The prepositions which govern the accusative are twenty-eight, viz.

Infra,	Beneath.
Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ob,	For.
Propter,	For, hard by.
Per,	By, through.
Præter,	Besides, except.
Penes,	In the power of.
Post,	After.
Pone,	Behind.
Secus,	By, along.
Secundum,	According to.
Supra,	Above.
Trans,	On the farther side.
Ultra,	Beyond.

II. The prepositions which govern the ablativum are fifteen, namely,

De,	Of, concerning.
E,	} Of, out of.
Ex,	
Pro,	For.
Præ,	Before. [of
Palam,	With the knowledge
Sine,	Without.
Tenus,	Up to.

III. These four govern sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablativum;

Super,	Above.
Subter,	Beneath.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, showing the relation of one substantive noun to another.

NOTE. That *pone* and *secus* rarely occur; and *prope*, nigh; *usque*, unto; *circiter*, about; *versus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *prepositions* governing the *accusative*; and *procul*, far, among those governing the *ablative*, are *adverbs*; and do not govern a case of themselves, but by the preposition *ad*, which is understood to the first four, and *a* or *ab* to the last. To which perhaps may be added, *clam*, which is joined very frequently with the *accusative*; as, *clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being understood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Besides the separate use of these Prepositions, there is another use arises from them, namely, their being put before a vast number of nouns and verbs in *composition*, which creates a great variety, and gives a peculiar elegance and beauty to the *Latin* tongue.

There are five or six *syllables*, viz. *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound* words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded: thus,

Am	} signifies	{ round about,	} as,	ambio,	to surround.	
Di,				asunder.	divello,	to pull asunder.
Dis,				again,	distrāho,	to draw asunder
Re,				aside or apart,	relēgo,	to read again.
Sa				together,	sepōno,	to lay aside.
Con,				concresec̄c,	to grow together	

CHAP. VII. OF INTERJECTION.

AN Interjection is an indeclinable word thrown into discourse, to signify some passion or emotion of the mind.

- Some of them express,
1. JOY ; as, Evax, hey, brave, io.
 2. GRIEF ; as, Ah, hei, heu, eheu, ah, alas, wo is me
 3. WONDER ; as, Papæ, O strange ; Vah, hah.
 4. PRAISE ; as, Euge, well done.
 5. AVERSION ; as, Apäge, away, begone, fie, tush.
 6. EXCLAIMING ; as, Oh, Proh, O !
 7. SURPRISE or FEAR ; as, Atat, ha, aha.
 8. IMPRECATION ; as, Væ, wo, pox on't.
 9. LAUGHTER ; as, Ha, ha, he.
 10. SILENCING ; as, Au, 'st, pax, silence, hush, 'st.
 11. CALLING ; as, Eho, io, ho, so, ho, soho, O.
 12. DERISION ; as, Hni, away with.
 13. ATTENTION ; as, Hem, hah.

NOTE 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one passion, and sometimes another ; as, *vah*, which is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

NOTE 2. That some of them are *natural sounds*, common to all languages.

NOTE 3. That *nouns* are used sometimes for *interjections* ; as, *malum!* with a pox ! with a mischief ! *infandum!* O shame, fie ! fie ! *misèrum!* O wretched ! *nefas!* O the villainy !

An *Interjection* is a compendious way of expressing a whole sentence in one word ; and used only to represent the passions and emotions of the soul, that the shortness of the one might the sooner express the suddenness and quickness of the other.

CHAP. VIII. OF CONJUNCTION.

A *Conjunction* is an indeclinable word that joins sentences together ; and thereby shows their dependence upon one another.

Of these some are called,

1. COPULATIVE ; as, et, ac, atque, que, and ; etiam, quoque, item, also ; cum, tum, both, and. Also their contraries, nec, neque, neu, neve, neither, nor.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE**; *as, aut, ve, vel, seu, sive, either, or.*
3. **CONCESSIVE**; *as, etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, though, although, albeit.*
4. **ADVERSATIVE**; *as, sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui, but; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.*
5. **CASUAL**; *as, nam, namque, enim, for; quia, quippe, quoniam, because; quod, that, because.*
6. **ILLATIVE or RATIONAL**; *as, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, therefore; quapropter, quocirca, wherefore; proinde, therefore; cum, quum, seeing, since; quandoquidem, forasmuch as.*
7. **FINAL or PERFECTIVE**; *as, ut, uti, that, to the end that.*
8. **CONDITIONAL**; *as, si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo, provided upon condition that; siquidem, if indeed.*
9. **EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE**; *as, ni, nisi, unless, except.*
10. **DIMINUTIVE**; *as, saltem, certè, at least.*
11. **SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE**; *as, au, anne, num, whether; ne, annon, whether, not; necne, or not.*
12. **EXPLETIVE**; *as, autem, verò, now, truly; quidem, equidem, indeed.*
13. **ORDINATIVE**; *as, deinde, thereafter; denique, finally, insuper, moreover; cæterum, moreover, but, however.*
14. **DECLARATIVE**; *as, videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c. to wit, namely.*

NOTE 1. That the same words, as they are taken in different views, are both Adverbs and Conjunctions; *as, an, anne, &c.* are Suspensive Conjunctions and Interrogative Adverbs. The same may be said of the Ordinate and Declarative Conjunctions, which under another view may be ranked under Adverbs of order and explaining. So likewise *utinam*, which is commonly called an Adverb of wishing, when more narrowly considered, is nothing else but the Conjunction *uti* [that] with the syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wish] understood; as, *Utinam adfuisses; Ut te Deus male perdat*; supply *opto*. But since both of them are indeclinable, there is no great need of being very nice in distinguishing them.

NOTE 2. That other parts of speech compounded together, supply the place of Conjunctions; as, *postea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, because, &c. Which are made up of the prepositions *post, præter*, and *propter*, with *ea* the pronoun.

NOTE 3. That some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *et, aut, nec, si, &c.* Some contrary to their natural order, stand in the second place, viz. *autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second, viz. *namque, etenim, siquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into prepositive, subjunctive, and common

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some observations concerning the various divisions and significations of words, especially noun and verb.

1. ALL words whatsoever are either simple or compound. A simple word [*simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *justus, lego*. A compound [*compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more words, or of a word and some syllabical adjection; as, *injustus, perlēgo, dereinquo, egōmet*.

2. All words whatsoever are either primitive or derivative. A primitive word [*primitivum*] is that which comes from no other word; as, *justus, lego*. A derivative [*derivativum*] is that which comes from another word; as, *justitia, lectio*.

I. Besides the more general divisions of nouns and pronouns mentioned p. 5. and 26. there are other particular divisions of them, taken from their various significations and derivations. The most remarkable whereof are these:

I. With respect to Signification.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a substantive noun which signifies many in the singular number; as, *populus, a people; exercitus, an army*.

2. AN INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a question; as, *quis? who? uter? which of the two? qualis? of what kind? quantus? how great? quot? how many?* And these, when they are used without a question, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an adjective that has respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipse, &c. Alius, alter, reliquus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus, &c.*

4. A **PARTATIVE** Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *omnis, nullus, quisque, &c.* or a part of many; as, *quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo, &c.*

5. A **NUMERAL** Noun [*Numerale*] is an adjective which signifies number, of which there are four principal kinds:

(1.) **CARDINAL**, [*Numerus Cardinalis*]; as, *unus, duo, tres, &c.*

(2.) **ORDINAL**, [*Ordinalis*]; as, *primus, secundus, tertius, &c.*

(3.) **DISTRIBUTIVE**, [*Distributivus*]; as, *singuli, bini, terni, &c.*

(4.) **MULTIPLICATIVE**, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *simplex, duplex, triplex, &c.*

II. With respect to the *signification* and *derivation*.

1. A **PATRONYMIC** Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a substantive noun derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's pedigree or extraction; as, *Priamides*, the son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the daughter of *Priamus*; *Æetias*, the daughter of *Æetes*; *Nerine*, the daughter of *Nereus*. *Patronymics* are generally derived from the name of the *father*, but the poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the *grandfather*, or some other remarkable person of the *family*; nay sometimes from the *founder* of a nation or people, and also from countries and cities; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Romulidæ*, the *Romans*, from their first king *Romulus*; *Sicilis, Troas*, a woman of *Sicily*, of *Troy*, &c. *Patronymics* of men end in *des*; of women in *is, as, and ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the *first*, and those in *is* and *as* of the *third* declension.

2. An **ABSTRACT** Noun [*Abstractum*] is a substantive derived from an adjective expressing the quality of that adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the quality is; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *dulcedo*, sweetness; from *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. With respect to these abstracts, the adjectives from which they come are called **CONCRETES**, because, besides the quality, they also confusedly signify something as the subject of it, without which they cannot make sense.

6. A **GENTILE** or **PATRIAL** Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an adjective derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country; as, *Scotus, Macædo, Arpinas, Edinburgensis, Taodmanus*; a man born in *Scotland, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee*; from *Sootia, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgum, Taodmum*.

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Possessivum*] is an adjective derived from a substantive whether proper or appellative, signifying possession or property; as, *Scoticus*, *Herculeus*, *Patermus*, *Herilis*, *Fœminæus*, of or belonging to *Scotland*, *Hercules*, a father, a master, a woman; from *Scotia*, *Hercules*, *Pater*, *Herus*, *Fœmina*.

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a substantive or adjective derived from another substantive or adjective respectively, importing a diminution, or lessening of its signification; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartûla*, a little paper; *oposcûlum*, a little work; from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*; *parvûlus*, very little; *candidûlus*, pretty white; from *parvus*, *candidus*. These for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a substantive or adjective derived from another noun; as, *gratia*, favour; *vinœa*, a vineyard; *senâtor*, a senator; from *gratus*, *vinum*, *senex*: *cœlestis*, heavenly; *humânus*, human; *aurêus*, golden; from *cælum*, *homo*, *aurum*.

7. A VERBAL Noun [*Verbale*] is a substantive or adjective derived from a verb; as, *amor*, love; *doctrina*, learning; *lectic* a lesson; *auditus*, hearing; from *amo*, *doceo*, *lego*, *audio* *amabilis*, lovely; *capax*, capable; *volûcer*, swift; from *ama* *capio*, *volo*.

8. Lastly, There are some nouns derived from *participles* *adverbs*, and *prepositions*; as, *fictitiûs*, counterfeit; *crastinûs*, belonging to the morrow; *contrariûs*, contrary; from *fictus*, *cras*, *contra*.

NOTE. That the same nouns, according to the different respects in which they are considered, may sometimes be ranked under one, and sometimes under another of the above mentioned classes; as, *quis*, is an *interrogative*, *relative*, or *partitive*; *piêtas*, an *abstract* or *denominative*.

II. Pronouns are divided into four classes, viz.

1. DEMONSTRATIVES, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*.
2. RELATIVES, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*.
3. POSSESSIVES, *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *nostrer*, *vester*.
4. PATRIALS or GENTILES, *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.

Of them also two are INTERROGATIVES, *quis* and *cujas*

III. 1. Verbs with respect to their *figure* or *frame*, are either simple; as, *amo*, I love; or, compound; as, *redâmo*, I love again.

2. With respect to their species or origin, are either **PRIMITIVE**; as, *lego*, I read; or **DERIVATIVE**; as, *lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their conjugation, are either **REGULAR**; as, *amo*: or **IRREGULAR**; as, *volo*, *vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their constituent parts, are either **COMPLETE**; as, *amo*: or **DEFECTIVE**; as, *inquam*: or **RE-DUNDANT**; as, *edo*, *edis*, and *es*, &c.

5. With respect to their persons, are either **PERSONAL**; as, *amo*: or **IMPERSONAL**; as, *pœnitet*.

6. With respect to their terminations, they end either in *o*; as, *amo*: or in *r*; as, *amor*: or in *m*; as, *sum*.

7. With respect to their signification, verbs are either substantive or adjective.

(1.) A **SUBSTANTIVE Verb** [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the affirmation of being or existence; as, *sum*, *ſic*, *existo*, I am.

(2.) An **ADJECTIVE Verb** [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the signification of being, has a particular signification of its own; as, *amo*, i. e. *sum amans*, I am loving.

An Adjective Verb is divided into active, passive, and neuter

(1.) An **ACTIVE Verb** [*Activum*] is that which affirms action of its person or nominative before it; as, *amo*, *loquor*, *curro*.

(2.) A **PASSIVE Verb** [*Passivum*] is that which affirms passion of its person or nominative before it; as, *amor*.

(3.) A **NEUTER Verb** [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither action nor passion of its nominative; but simply signifies the state, posture, or quality of things; as, *sto*, *sedeo*, *maneo*, *duro*, *vireo*, *flaveo*, *sapio*, *quiesco*, &c. to stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An Active Verb is again divided into transitive and intransitive.

(1.) An Active **TRANSITIVE Verb** [*Transitivum*] is that whose action passeth from the agent to some other thing; as, *amo patrem*.

(2.) An Active **INTRANSITIVE Verb** [*Intransitivum*] is that whose action passeth not from the agent to any other; as, *curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any verb you put the question *whom?* or *what?* if a rational answer can be returned, the verb is transitive; as, *whom, or what do you teach?* Answer, a boy the grammar. 'If not, it is intransitive; as, *what do you run, go, come, live, sleep, &c.* to which no rational answer can be given, unless it be by a word

of like signification, which sometimes indeed these verbs have after them ; as, *vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant life ; *eo iter longum*, I go a long journey.

NOTE 1. That the same verb is sometimes transitive, and sometimes intransitive ; as, *ver incipit*, the spring begins, Cic. *Incipere facinus*, to begin an action, Plaut.

NOTE 2. That neuter and intransitive verbs are often Englished with the signs of a passive verb ; as, *caleo*, I am hot ; *palleo*, I am pale ; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE 3. That neuter and intransitive verbs want the passive voice, unless impersonally used, as the intransitive verbs most frequently and elegantly are ; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum est*.

Though all verbs whatsoever, with respect to their signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing classes, yet because grammarians, together with the signification of verbs, are obliged also to consider their termination, and finding that all active verbs did not end in *o*, neither all passives in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other classes or kinds of them, viz. deponent, common and neuter passive.

(1.) A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a passive termination, but an active or neuter signification ; as, *loquor*, I speak ; *morior*, I die.

(2.) A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a passive termination has a signification either active or passive ; as, *crimior*, I accuse, or I am accused ; *dignor*, I think, or I am thought worthy.

(3.) A NEUTER PASSIVE [*Neutro-passivum*] is that which is half active and half passive in its termination, but in its signification is either wholly passive ; as, *fi*, *factus sum*, to be made : or wholly active or neuter ; as, *audeo*, *ausus sum*, to dare ; *gaudeo*, *gavisus sum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other kinds of derivative verbs, which are not very material, there are three kinds of them derived from verbs, which deserve to be remarked, viz. frequentatives, inceptives, and desideratives.

(1.) FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] signify frequency of action. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ito* from verbs of the first, and *u* into *o* from verbs of the other three conjugations. They are all of the first ; as, *clamo*, to cry frequently, from *clamo* ; *dormio*, to sleep often, from *dormio*. From them also are formed other frequentatives ; as, *curro*, *curso*, *currito* ; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito* ; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsito* and *pulto*.

(2.) **INCEPTIVES** [*Verba inceptiva*] signify that a thing is begun and tending to perfection. They are formed from the second person sing. pres. ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the third conjugation, and want both preterite and supine; as, *Caleo, cales, calesco*, I grow or wax warm.

(3.) **DESIDERATIVES** [*Verba desiderativa*] signify a desire of action. They are formed from the last supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and generally want both preterite and supine; as, *Cœnaturio*, I desire to sup; *Esurio*, I am hungry, or I desire to eat.

9. Lastly, in construction, verbs receive names from their more particular significations; as, vocative verbs, or verbs of naming, verbs of remembering, of want, of teaching, of accusing, &c.

In the preceding division of verbs, with respect to their signification, I have receded a little from the common method; and in particular I have given a different account of neuter verbs from that commonly received by grammarians, who comprise under them all intransitive verbs, though their significations be ever so much active. But this I did partly from the reason of the name, which imports a negation both of action and passion, and partly to give a distinct view of the significations of verbs, without regard to their terminations, which in that respect are purely accidental and arbitrary.

*I have also excluded from the division of verbs, those called Neutral Passives [Lat. Neutra passiva] because originally they are active verbs; for the primary signification of *vapulo* is *pereo* or *ploro*; of *exulo*, *extra solum eo*; of *veneo*, *venum eo*; of *nubo*, *velo*. *Liceo*, indeed is a very singular verb, for in the active voice it signifies passively, and in the passive, actively.*

PARS TERTIA.

DE SENTENTIIS, SIVE ORATIONE.

• Sententia est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata: ut, *tu legis; tu legis libros; tu legis libros bonos; tu legis libros bonos domi* (a.)

PART THIRD.

OF SENTENCES, OR SPEECH.

A sentence is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, you read books; you read good books; you read good books at home.

CAP. I.

DE SYNTAXI, VEL CONSTRUCTIONE.

Syntaxis est recta vocum in oratione compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, concordantia et regimen (b.)

CHAP. I.

OF SYNTAX, OR CONSTRUCTION.

Syntax is the right ordering of words in speech.

Its parts are two, concord and government.

(a) We have now arrived at the principal part of *Grammar*; for the great end of speech being to convey our thoughts unto others, it will be of little use to us to have a stock of words, and to know what changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to practice, and make them answer the great purposes for which they are intended. To the attainment of this end there are two things absolutely necessary, viz. I. That in speech we dispose and frame our words, according to the laws and rules established among those whose language we speak. II. That in like manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due order, and resolve it into the several parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called *Syntax* or *Construction*, and the second is named *Exposition* or *Resolution*. The first shows us how to speak the language ourselves; and the second how to understand it when spoken by others.—But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary connexion between them, that he who is master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE 1. That the difference between concord and government consists chiefly in this—that in concord there can no change be made in the accidents, that is, gender, case, number or person of the one, but the like change must also be made in

Concordantia est quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibusdam accidentibus.

Regimen est quando dictio regit certum casum.

Concord is when one word agrees with another in some accidents.

Government is when a word governs a certain case.

I. DE CONCORDANTIA.

CONCORDANTIA est quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi cum substantivo.*
2. *Verbi cum nominativo.*
3. *Relativi cum antecedente.*
4. *Substantivi cum substantivo.*

REGULA I.

Adjectivum concordat cum substantivo in genere, numero et casu : ut,

* *Vir* † *bonus.*

* *Fœmina* † *casta.*

† *Dulce* * *pomum.*

I. OF CONCORD.

CONCORD is fourfold.

1. *Of an adjective with a substantive.*
2. *Of a verb with a nominative.*
3. *Of a relative with an antecedent.*
4. *Of a substantive with a substantive.*

RULE I.

An adjective agrees with 1 a substantive in gender, number and case : as,

A good man.

A chaste woman.

A sweet apple.

the other : but in government, the first word (if declinable) may be changed, without any change in the second. In concord, the first word may be called the word directing, and the second the word directed : in government the first is called the word governing, and the second the word governed.

NOTE 2. That for the greater ease both of master and scholar, we have noted those words wherein the force of each example lieth, with the marks (*) and (†) ; the word directing or governing with (*) and the word directed or governed with (†) ; or where there are two words directing or governing, the first with (*) and the second with (**); and where two words directed or governed, the first with (†) and the second with (††).

Number 1. NOTE 1. That the way to find out the substantive is to ask the question *who* or *what*? to the adjective ; for that which answers to it is the substantive. And the same question put to the verb or relative, discovers the nominative or antecedent.

REG. II.

2. Verbum concordat cum nominativo ante se in numero et persona ; ut,
 * *Ego* † *lego*.
 * *Tu* † *scribis*.
 * *Præceptor* † *docet*.

RULE II.

A verb agrees with the nominative before it in number and person ; as,
 I read.
 You write.
 The master teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

3. 1. Verba substantiva, vocandi et gestus habent utrinque nominativum ad eandem rem pertinentem ; ut,

† *Ego* * *sum* †† *discipulus*.
 † *Tu* * *vocaris* †† *Joannes*.
 † *Illa* * *incēdit* †† *regina*.

.1. *Substantive verbs, verbs of naming and gesture have a nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same thing ; as,*
 I am a scholar.
 You are named *John*.
 She walks [*as*] a queen.

NOTE 2. That another adjective sometimes supplies the place of a substantive ; as, *amicus certus*, a sure friend ; *bona ferina*, good venison. *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, and *caro* to *ferina*.

NOTE 3. That the substantive THING [*negotium*] is most frequently understood ; and then the adjective is always put in the neuter gender, as if it were a substantive ; as, *triste*, [supple *negotium*] i. e. *res tristis*, a sad thing. *Bona*, [supple *negotia*] i. e. *res bonæ*, good things.

Num. 2. NOTE. That the infinitive mood frequently supplies the place of the nominative ; as, *mentiri non est meum*. To lie is not mine, (or my property.)

Num. 3. 1. Substantive verbs are *sum*, *fiō*, *forem* and *existo*.

2. Verbs of naming are these passives, *appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nominor*, *nuncūpor* ; to which add, *videor*, *existimor*, *creor*, *constituor*, *salūtor*, *designor*, &c.

3. Verbs of gesture are, *eo*, *incēdo*, *venio*, *cubo*, *sto*, *sedeo*, *evādo*, *fugio*, *dormio*, *sonnio*, *moneo*, &c.

NOTE. That any verb may have after it the nominative, when it belongs to the same thing with the nominative before it ; as, *audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being (or when I was) a boy. *Defendi rempublicam adolescens, non deseram senex*, I defended the commonwealth (when I was) a young man, I will not desert it (now that I am) old, *Cic*.

2. ¶ **EXCEP.** Infinitivus modus accusativum ante se habet; ut,

*Gaudeo † te * valēre.*

3. ¶ **ESSE** habet eundem casum post se quem ante se; ut,

† *Petrus cupit * esse †† vir doctus.*

*Scio † Petrum * esse †† virum doctum.*

† *M'hi †† negligenti * esse non licet.*

REG. III.

Relativum *qui, quæ, quod*, concordat cum antecedente in genere et numero; ut,

* *Vir sapit † qui pauca loquitur.*

2. ¶ **EXCEP.** *The Infinitive mood has an accusative before it; as,*

I am glad that you are well.

3. ¶ **ESSE** hath the same case after it that it hath before it; as,

Peter desires to be a learned man.

I know that Peter is a learned man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

The relative qui, quæ, quod, agrees with the antecedent in gender and number; as,

He is a wise man who speaks little.

Num. 4. NOTE. That when the particle *that* (in *Lat. quod, or ut*) comes between two verbs, it is elegantly left out, by turning the nominative case into the accusative, and the verb into the infinitive mood; as, *aiunt regem adventare*, they say (that) the king is coming; rather than *aiunt quod rex adventat*. *Turpe est eos, qui bene nati sunt, turpiter vivere*, it is a shameful thing that they who are well born should live basely; rather than, *ut ii turpiter vivant*. See p. 47.

Num. 5. NOTE 1. That we frequently say, *licet nobis esse bonos*; we may be good. *Tibi expedit esse sedulum*, it is expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuisse pium*, it never hurt any man that he hath been pious: but then the accusative, *nos, te, illum, &c.* is understood; thus *licet nobis [nos] esse bonos, &c.*

NOTE 2. That if *esse*, and the other infinitives of substantive verbs, verbs of naming, &c. have no accusative or dative before them, the word that follows (whether substantive or adjective) is to be put in the nominative; as, *dicitur esse vir*, he is said to be a man. *Non videtur esse facturus*, he seems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante suum obitum*, no man should be called happy before his death.

Num. 6. NOTE 1. That the antecedent is a substantive noun that goes before the relative, and is again understood to the re-

7 1. Si nullus interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit verbum nominativus; ut,
*Præceptor * qui † docet.*

8 2. At si interveniat nominativus inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit ejus casus quem verbum aut nomen sequens, vel præpositio præcedens regere solent; ut,

*Deus † quem * colimus.*
† *Cujus * munere vivimus.*
† *Cui nullus est * similis.*
* *A † quo facta sunt omnia.*

1. If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be the nominative to the verb; as,
The master who teacheth.

2. But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative shall be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before use to govern; as,

God whom we worship.
By whose gift we live.
To whom there is none like.
By whom all things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura substantiva singularia, conjunctione (*et, ac, atque, &c.*) copulata, habent adjectivum, verbum vel relativum plurale; ut,
* *Petrus et Joannes † qui † sunt † docti.*

¶ Two or more substantives singular coupled together with a conjunction (*et, ac, atque, &c.*) have a verb, adjective, or relative plural; as,
Peter and John who are learned.

lative.—Wherefore it will not be amiss to teach the scholar to supply it every where; thus, beware of idleness, which (idleness) is an enemy to virtue, *cave segnitiam, quæ (segnities) est inimica virtuti.* Nay Cicero himself, but especially Cæsar, frequently repeats the substantive; as, *in oppidum perfugisti, quo in oppido, &c.* You fled to a town, in which town, Cic. *Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant.* They appoint a day, on which day they should meet upon the bank of the river Rhone, Cæs.

NOTE 2. That when the relative respects a whole sentence, it is put in the neuter gender; as, *Joannes mortuus est, quod mihi summo dolore est,* John is dead, which is a great grief to me.

NOTE 3. That the person of the relative is always the same with that of its antecedent; as, *ego qui doceo,* I who teach. *Tu qui discis,* you who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur,* the lesson which is taught.

Num. 9. NOTE 1. That when the substantives are of different genders, and signify persons, the adjective or relative plural must

REG. IV.

Unum substantivum concordat cum alio, eandem rem significante, in casu; ut,

* Cicero † orator.

* Urbs † Edinburgum.

* Filius † deliciae matris suae (a).

RULE IV.

One substantive agrees 10 with another, signifying the same thing, in case; as,

Cicero the orator.

The city of Edinburgh.

A son the darling of his mother.

agree with the masculine rather than the feminine; as, *pater et mater qui sunt mortui*, the father and mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the substantives, or any one of them, signify things without life, the adjective, or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *civitiæ, decus et gloria in oculis sita sunt*, riches, honour and glory are set before your eyes.

NOTE 2. That when two or more nominatives are of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second: and the second rather than the third; as, *si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valemus*, if you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.

NOTE 3. That the adjective or verb frequently agrees with the substantive or nominative that is nearest them, and are understood to the rest; as, *et ego in culpa sum et tu*, both I and you are in the fault; or, *et ego et tu es in culpa*. *Nihil hic deest nisi carmina*, there is nothing here wanting but charms or, *nihil hic nisi carmina desunt*. This manner of construction is most usual, when the different words signify one and the same thing, or much to the same purpose; as, *mens, ratio et consilium in senibus est*, understanding, reason and prudence, is in old men.

NOTE 4. That collective nouns, because they are equivalent to a plural number, have sometimes the adjective or verb in the plural number; as, *pars virgis cæsæ*, a part of them were scourged. *Turba ruunt*, the crowd rush.

(a) To these four concords some add a fifth, viz. that of the responsive, agreeing with its interrogative in case; as, *quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater*. Who gave you money? my father. *Quo cares? Libro*. What do you want? A book. But this ought not to be made a principal rule; for the responsive, or the word that answers the question, does not depend upon the interrogative, but upon the verb, or some other word joined with it; which because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the answer; thus, *quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* (dedit mihi pecuniam) *quo cares? (Careo) Libro*.

II. DE REGIMINE. REGIMEN est triplex.

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilitum.*

I. Regimen Nominum. § 1. SUBSTANTIVORUM. REG. I.

- 11 Unum substantivum regit aliud, rem diversam significans, in genitivo; ut,
- * *Amor † Dei.*
 - * *Lex † naturæ.*

II. OF GOVERNMENT. GOVERNMENT is three-fold

1. Of nouns.
2. Of verbs.
3. Of words indeclinable.

I. The Government of Nouns § 1. OF SUBSTANTIVES RULE I.

- One substantive governs another, signifying a different thing in the genitive; as,*
The love of God.
The law of nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

- 12 † 1. Si posterius substantivum adjunctum habeat adjectivum laudis vel vituperii, in genitivo vel ablativo poni potest; ut,
- * *Vir † summæ † prudentiæ, vel † summâ † prudentiâ.*
 - * *Puer † probæ † indôlis, vel † probâ † indole.*

- 13 † 2. Adjectivum in neutro genere, absque substantivo, regit genitivum; ut,
- * *Multum † pecuniæ.*
 - * *Quid † rei?*

1. *If the last substantive have an adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the genitive or ablativè; as,*

A man of great wisdom.

A boy of a good disposition.

2. *An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive; as*

Much money.

What is the matter?

Num. 11. NOTE 1. That *of* or *'s* is the ordinary sign of this genitive.

NOTE 2. That the relative pronouns, *ejus, illius, cujus, &c.* Englished, *his, hers, its, theirs, thereof, whereof, whose*, have their substantives generally understood; as, *liber ejus*, (supple *hominis, fœminæ, &c.*) His book or her book. *Libri eorum* (supple *hominum, fœminarum, &c.*) Their books.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia? Quæ res?*

NOTE 1. That those adjectives which thus govern the genitive, as if they were substantives, are generally such as signify quantity; as, *multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE 2. That *plus* and *quid* always govern the genitive, and upon that account are by many thought real substantives.

§ 2. ADJECTIVORUM.
REG. I.

‡ Adjectiva verbalia vel affectionem animi significantia genitivum postulant; ut,

- * *Avidus* † *gloriæ*.
- * *Ignarus* † *fraudis*.
- * *Memor* † *beneficiorum*.

REG. II.

* Partitiva et partitivè posita, comparativa, superlativa, interrogativa et quædam numeralia genitivo plurali gaudent; ut,

- * *Aliquis* † *philosophorum*.
- * *Senior* † *fratrum*.
- * *Doctissimus* † *Romanorum*.
- * *Quis* † *nostrum* ?
- * *Una* † *musarum*.
- * *Octavus* † *sapientum*.

§ 2. OF ADJECTIVES.
RULE I.

Verbal adjectives, or such 14 as signify an affection of the mind, require the genitive; as,

- Desirous of glory.
- Ignorant of fraud.
- Mindful of favours.

RULE II.

Partitives and words 15 placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives and some numerals govern the genitive plural; as,

- Some one of the philosophers
- The elder of the brothers.
- The most learned of the Romans.
- Which of us ?
- One of the muses.
- The eighth of the wise men

Num. 14. To this rule belong,

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus*.

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præsciens, præcæsus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, &c.*

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor*.

4. Of GUILT; as, *consciens, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus*.

5. Verbals in *ax* and *us*; as, *edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, perversax*: and *amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, &c.*

6. To which may be referred, *æmulus, munificus, parvus, prodigus, profusus, securus*.

Num. 15. NOTE 1. That it is easy to know when this rule takes place, by resolving the genitive into *inter* with the *accus* or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the *abl.* as, *optimus regum*, the best of kings. i. e. *optimus inter reges*, or *de, e, ex, regibus*.

NOTE 2. That when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the first than the

REG. III.

- 16 Adjectiva significantia commodum vel incommodum, similitudinem vel dissimilitudinem, regunt dativum; ut,
 * *Utilis* † *bello*.
 * *Perniciosus* † *reipublicæ*.

* *Similis* † *patri*.

- 17 ¶ Verbalia in bilis et dus regunt dativum; ut,
 * *Amandus* vel * *amabilis* † *omnibus*.

REG. IV.

- 18 * Adjectiva dimensionem significantia regunt accusativum mensuræ; ut,
Columna sexaginta † *pedes*
 * *alta*.

RULE III.

Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as,

Profitable for war.

Pernicious to the commonwealth.

Like his father.

Verbals in bilis and dus govern the dative; as,

To be loved of all men.

RULE IV.

Adjectives signifying dimension govern the accusative of measure; as,

A pillar sixty feet high.

last; as, *indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus*, Plin. Otherwise it is of the same gender with the substantive, it governs; as, *pauca animalium, unaquæque feminarum*.

NOTE 3. That partitives, &c. take the genitive singular of collective nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in gender; as, *præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una*, Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE 1. That some of these adjectives govern also the genitive; as, *amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, æqualis, similis, dissimilis, proprius, communis*, &c.

NOTE 2. That adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, choose rather the accus. with *ad*, than the dat. such as, *proclivis, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger*, &c. as,

Est piger ad pœnas princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE 3. That adject. signifying fitness or the contrary, may have either of them; as *aptus, ineptus, bello, or ad bellum*.

Num. 17. *Of or by* is the ordinary sign of this dative.

NOTE. That participles of the preter tense, and pas. verbs also especially among the poets, have frequently the dat. instead of the abl. with *a* or *ab*; as, *nullus eorum mihi visus est*, none of them was seen by me; *non audior ulli*, I am not heard by any

Num. 18. The adject. of dimension are, *altus*, high or deep; *crassus* or *densus*, thick; *latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *profundus*, deep. The names of measure are, *digitus*, an inch; *pal-*

REG. V.

* Comparativus regit ablativum qui resolvitur per quam; ut,

* *Dulcior* † *melle*.

* *Præstantior* † *auro*.

REG. VI.

‡ *Hæc adjectiva dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus et fretus: item natus, satus, ortus, editus, et similia, ablativum petunt; ut,*

* *Dignus* † *honore*.

* *Præditus* † *virtute*.

* *Contentus* † *parvo*.

* *Captus* † *oculis*.

* *Fretus* † *viribus*.

* *Ortus* † *regibus*.

REG. VII.

Adjectivum copiae aut inopiae regit genitivum vel ablativum; ut,

* *Plenus* † *ira* vel † *ira*.

* *Inops* † *rationis*.

RULE V.

The comparative degree 19 governs the ablativè, which is resolved by quam; as, Sweeter than honey. Better than gold.

RULE VI.

These adjectives, dignus, 20 indignus, contentus, præditus, captus, and fretus: also natus, satus, ortus, editus, and the like, require the ablativè; as,

Worthy of honour.

Endued with virtue.

Content with little.

Blind.

Trusting to his strength.

Descended of kings.

RULE VII.

An adjective of plenty 21 or want governs the genitive or ablativè; as,

Full of anger.

Void of reason.

mus, a hand-breadth; pes, a foot; cubitus, a cubit; ulna, an ell; passus, a pace, &c.

NOTE 1. That verbs signifying dimension likewise have the Acc. of measure; as, *patet tres ulnas*, it is three ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE 2. That sometimes the word of measure is put in the Abl. as, *fossa sex cubitis alta, duodécim lata*, *Liv. Venter ejus exstat sesquipède*, *Pers.* And sometimes, but rarely, in the Gen. as, *nec longiores duodénam pedum*, *Plin.*

Num. 19. Let the following examples be observed and imitated: *multo melior*, much better, *nihilo peior*, nothing worse, *major solito*, greater than usual, *quo diligentior es, eo doctior evâdes*, the more diligent you are, the more learned you will become, *quanto superbius, tanto vilior*, the prouder, the less worth, *nihil Virgilico doctius*, there is none more learned than *Virgil*.

Num. 21. NOTE 1. That *distentus gravidus, refertus*; and *orbis, vacuus, viduus*, choose rather the Ablative: *indignus, compos* and *impos* the Genitive.

II. Regimen Verborum.

§ 1. PERSONALIUM.

REG. I.

22 † *Sum* quoties possessionem, proprietatem aut officium significat, regit genitivum; ut,

* *Est † regis punire rebelles.*

† *Insapientis * est dicere, non putaram.*

† *Militum * est suo duci parere.*

23 ¶ *Excipiuntur hi nominativi, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum; ut,*

† *Tuum * est id procurare.*

REG. II.

24 * *Misereor, miseresco et satagi* regunt genitivum; ut,

* *Miserere † civium tuorum.*

* *Satagit † rerum suarum.*

II. The Government of Verbs.

§1 OF PERSONAL VERBS.

RULE I.

Sum, when it signifies possession, property or duty, governs the genitive; as,

It belongs to the king to punish rebels.

It is the property of a fool to say, I had not thought.

It is the duty of soldiers to obey their general.

¶ *These nominatives meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, are excepted; as,*

It is your duty to manage that.

RULE II.

Misereor, miseresco and satago govern the genitive; as,

Take pity on your countrymen.

He hath his hands full at home.

NOTE 2. That some comprehend *opus* and *usus*, when they signify necessity, under this rule; as, *quid opus est verbis?* what need is there of words? Ovid. *Nunc viribus usus*, now there is need of strength, Virg. But it is to be remarked that these are substantive nouns, the very same with *opus*, *operis*, a work, and *usus*, *usus*, use; and have the Ablative after them, because of the preposition *in*, which is understood. Sometimes *opus* is an adjective indeclinable; as, *dux nobis opus est*, we stand in need of a leader. It is elegantly joined with the participle perfect; as, *consulto, maturato, invento, facto, &c. opus est*, we must advise, make haste, find out, do, &c.

Num. 23. To these last may be added possessive nouns, such as, *regium, humanum, belluinum*, and the like; as, *humanum est errare*, it is incident to man to err.

NOTE. That to all these are understood *officium, opus, negotium*, or some other word to be gathered from the sentence; as, *me Pompeii totum esse scis*, you know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's interest, Cic. i. e. *amicum, factorem*, or the like.

REG. III.

Est pro habeo regit dativum personæ; ut,

* *Est † mihi liber.*

* *Sunt † mihi libri.*

REG. IV.

Sum pro affero regit duos dativos, unum personæ, alterum rei; ut,

* *Est mihi † voluptati.*

REG. V.

Verbum significans commodum vel incommodum regit dativum; ut,

*Fortuna * favet † fortibus.*

† Nemini † noceas.

RULE III.

Est taken for habeo (to 25 have) governs the dative of a person; as,

I have a book.

I have books.

RULE IV.

Sum taken for affero (to 26 bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

It is (brings) a pleasure to me.

RULE V.

A verb signifying advantage or disadvantage governs the dative; as,

Fortune favours the brave.

Do hurt to no man.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *habeo librum, or habeo libros.*

So *desum* is used elegantly for *careo*; as, *desunt mihi libri, for careo libris, I want books.*

Num. 26. NOTE. That other verbs, such as, *do, duco, verto, tribuo, habeo, relinquo, &c.* may have two datives; as, *hoc tibi laudi datur.* You are praised for this. *Ne mihi vitio vertas,* do not blame me.

To this may be referred such expressions as these, *est mihi nomen Joanni,* my name is John; which is more elegant than *Est mihi nomen Joannes or Joannis.*

Num. 27. This is a very general rule, and (when we signify a thing to be acquired to any person or thing) almost common to all verbs. But in a more particular manner are comprehended under it.

Verbs signifying {

1. To PROFIT or HURT; as, *commodo, proficio, placeo, consulo; noceo, officio.* But *lædo* and *offendo* govern the accusative.
2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their contraries; as, *faveo, annuo, arrideo, assentior, adstipulo, gratulor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulo, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, studeo, supplico, &c.* Also *auxilior, adminiculo, subvenio, succurro, patrocinator, medeor*: also *derogo, detraho invidere* &c. But *juvo* has the accusative

REG. VI

28. Verbum active significans regit accusativum; ut,
 * *Ama* † *deum*.
 * *Reverere* † *parentes*.
 29. † *Recordor*, *memini*, *remis-
 niscor* et *obliscor* regunt
 accusativum vel genitivum;
 ut,
 * *Recordor* † *lectionis* vel
 † *lectionem*.
 * *Obliscor* † *injurie* vel
injuriam.

RULE VI.

- A verb signifying actively
 governs the accusative; as,
 Love God.
 Reverence your parents.
 Recordor memini, remis-
 cor and obliscor govern the
 accusative or genitive; as,
 I remember my lesson.
 I forget an injury.*

Verbs signifying

3. To COMMAND, OBEY or RESIST; as, *Impero*, *præcipio*, *mando*: *pareo*, *servio*, *obedio*, *obsequor*, *obtempero*, *morengero*, *morigeror*, *famulor*: *pugno*, *repugno*, *certo*, *obsto*, *reluctor*, *renitor*, *resisto*, *adversor*, *refragor*, &c. But *jubeo* governs the accusative.
 4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with; as, *minor*, *indignor*, *irascor*, *succenseo*.
 5. To TRUST; as, *fido*, *confido*, *credo*.
 6. Verbs compounded with *satis*, *bene* and *male*; *Satisfacio*, *benefacio*, *benedico*, *malefacio*, *maledico*.
 7. *Sum* with its compounds, except *possum*.
 8. Verbs compounded with these ten prepositions, *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *præ*, *sub* and *super*: as, 1. *Adsto*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *assideo*, *adhæreo*, *admoveo*. 2. *Antecello*, *anteo*, *antevertor*. 3. *Consõno*, *commisceo*, *condõno*, *commorior*. 4. *Ilûdo*, *immorior*, *inhæreo*, *insideo*, *inhio*, *innitor*, *invigilo*, *incumbo*. 5. *Interpõno*, *intervenio*, *intersero*. 6. *Obrepro*, *obtrecto*, *occumbo*. 7. *Pospõno*, *posthabeo*. 8. *Præeo*, *præstat* for *excellit*, *præluceo*. 9. *Succedo*, *submitto*, *subjicio*, 10. *Supersto*, *supervenio*.

NOTE 1. That TO, the sign of the dative, is frequently understood.

NOTE 2. That TO is not always the sign of the dative, for 1. Verbs of local motion; as, *eo*, *venio*, *proficiscor*: and 2. these verbs *provoco*, *voco*, *invito*, *hortor*, *specto*, *pertineo*, *attineo*, and such like, have the accusative with the preposition *ad*.

Num. 28. NOTE. That neuter and intransitive verbs have sometimes an accusative after them. 1. Of their own or like signification; as, *vivere vitam*, *gaudere gaudium*, *sitre sanguinem*, *olere hircum*. 2. When taken in a metaphoric sense, as, *ardebat alexin*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*

Verba activa aliam una cum accusativo casum regentia.

§ 1. Verba accusandi, damnandi, et absolvendi cum accusativo personæ, regunt etiam genitivum criminis; ut,

* *Arguit* † *me* †† *furti.*

† *Meipsum* †† *inertiæ* * *condemno.*

† *Illum* †† *homicidii* * *absolvunt.*

2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi et auferendi, regunt accusativum cum dativo; ut,

Active verbs governing another case together with the accusative.

1. *Verbs of accusing, 30 condemning and acquitting, with the accusative of the person, govern also the genitive of the crime; as,*

He accuses me of theft.

I condemn myself of laziness.

They acquit him of manslaughter.

2. *Verbs of comparing, 31 giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative with the dative; as,*

Num. 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo, &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, damno, condemno, convinco, &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.

NOTE 1. That the genitive may be changed into the ablative, either with or without a preposition; as, *purgo te hac culpa*, or *de hac culpa*, I clear you of this fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit*, he found him guilty of a riot, Cic.

NOTE 2. That the genitive, properly speaking, is governed by some ablative understood, such as, *crimine, pœna, actione, causa*; as, *accusare furti*, i. e. *crimine furti*. *Condemnare capitis*, i. e. *pœna capitis*.

NOTE 3. That *crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a preposition.

Num. 31. 1. To verbs of COMPARING belong also verbs of preferring or postponing.

2. To verbs of GIVING belong verbs of receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.

3. To verbs of DECLARING belong verbs of explaining, showing, denying, &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are *aufero, adimo, eripio, extimo, demo, surripio, detraho, tollo, exento, extorqueo, arceo defendo, &c*

- *Compāro* † *Virgīlium* † †
Homēro.
 - *Suum* † † *cuique* * *tribuito.*
 - *Narras* † *fabulam* † † *sur-*
do.
 - *Eripuit* † *me* † † *morti.*
- 32 § 3. *Verba rogandi et do-*
cendi duos admittunt accu-
sativos, priorem personæ,
posteriolem rei ; ut,
• *Posce* † *Deum* † † *veniam.*
• *Docuit* † *me* † † *grammati-*
cam.

I compare Virgil to Homer.

Give every man his own.
You tell a story to a deaf
man.

He rescued me from death.

3. *Verbs of asking and*
teaching admit of two accusa-
tives, the first of a person, and
the second of a thing ; as,

Beg pardon of God.

He taught me grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

- 33 § *Quorum activa duos casus*
regunt, eorum passiva poste-
riorem retinent ; ut,
• *Accūsor* † *fursi.*
Virgilius * *comparatur* †
Homēro.
• *Doceor* † *grammaticam.*

The passives of such active
verbs as govern two cases, do
still retain the last of them ; as

I am accused of theft.

Virgil is compared to Homer

I am taught grammar.

REG. VII.

- 34 § *Pretium rei à quovis ver-*
bo in ablativo regitur ; ut,

RULE VII.

The price of a thing is gov-
erned in the ablative by any
verb ; as,

NOTE 1. That many of these verbs govern the dative by
Num. 27.

NOTE 2. That innumerable other verbs may have the accu-
sative with the dative when together with the thing done is also
signified the person or thing to, or for whom it is done ; as, *doce*
mihī filium, teach me my son ; *cura mihī hanc rem*, take care of
this affair for me.

NOTE 3. That *compāro*, *confēro*, *compōno*, have frequently
the ablative with *cum*.

Num. 32. NOTE 1. That among the verbs that govern two
accusatives, are also reckoned the following :

1. *CELO* ; as, *cela hanc rem uxorem*, conceal this from your
wife, Plaut. But we can also say, *cela te de hac re*, and *celo*
tibi hanc rem.

2. Verbs of *CLOTHING* ; as, *induit se calceos*, he put on
his shoes. But these have more commonly the ablative of the

- *Emi librum † duobus assibus.*
 * *Vendidit hic † auro patriam.*
*Demosthēnes * docuit † talento.*
 † *Excipiuntur hi genitivi, tanti, quanti, pluris, minōris; ut,*
 † *Quanti * constitit ?*
Asse et † pluris.
 * *Verba æstimandi regunt hujusmodi genitivos, magni, parvi, nihili, &c. ut,*
 * *Æstimo te † magni.*

I bought a book for two shillings.
 This man sold his country for gold.
 Demosthenes taught for a talent.
These gen. tanti, quanti, 35 pluris, minōris, are excepted; as,
 How much cost it ?
 A shilling and more.
Verbs of valuing govern 36 such gen. as these, magni, parvi, nihili, &c. as,
 I value you much.

thing without a preposition; as, *vestit se purpura*, he clothes himself with purple. *Induo* and *exuo* have frequently the person in the dative, and the thing in the accus. as, *thoracem sibi induit*, he put on his breast-plate.

3. MONEO; as, *id unum te moneo*, I put you in mind of this one thing. But, unless it is some general word, (as, *hoc illud, id, &c.*) *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio*, have either the genitive, as, *admoneo te officii*, I put you in mind of your duty; or the abl. with *de*; as, *de hac re te sæpius admonui*, I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE 2. That verbs of asking often change the accusative of the person into an ablative with the preposition; as, *oro, exoro, peto, postulo, hoc à te*; I intreat this of you: some always, as, *contendo, quæro, scitor, sciscitor hoc à te*. Finally, some have the accusative of the person, and the ablative of the thing with *de*; as, *interrogo, consulo, percontor te de hac re*.

Num. 35. NOTE. That if the substantive be expressed; they are put in the ablative; as, *quanto pretio ? minore mercede*.

Num. 36. 1. The verbs of valuing are, *æstimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo*.

2. The rest of the genitives are, *minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, navici, flocci, pili, assis, te runcii, hujus*: also *æqui* and *boni* after *facio* and *consulo*.

NOTE 1. That we say also *æstimo, magno, parvo*, supple *pretio*.

NOTE 2. That *alvarus* excludes *majoris*, as wanting authority. But there is an example of it to be found in Phædrus, II. 5. 25
Multo majoris alape mecum veneunt.

REG. VIII.

37 † Verbs *copiæ et inopiæ* plerumque ablativum regunt; ut,

* *Abundat † divitiis.*

* *Caret omni † culpa.*

38 † *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* regunt ablativum; ut,

* *Utitur † fraude.*

* *Abutitur † libris.*

§ 2. REGIMEN VERBORUM IMPERSONALIUM.

REG. IX.

39. Verbum impersonale regit dativum; ut,

* *Expedit † reipublicæ.*

* *Licet † nemini peccare.*

40. † Except. *refert et interest* genitivum postulant; ut,

* *Refert † patris.*

* *Interes: † omnium.*

RULE VIII.

Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the abl. as,

He abounds in riches.

He has no fault.

Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the abl. as,

He uses deceit.

He abuses books.

§ 2. THE GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

RULE IX.

An impersonal verb governs the dat. as,

It is profitable for the state.

No man is allowed to sin.

Except. 1. Refert and interest require the gen. as,

It concerns my father

It is the interest of all.

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the gen. *as, ægit æris, he wants money, Hor. Implentur veteris bacchi, they are filled with old wine, Virg.*

NOTE. That verbs of loading and unloading, and the like, belong to this rule; *as, navis oneratur mercibus, the ship is loaded with goods. Levabo te hoc onere, I will ease you of this burden. Liberavit nos metu, he delivered us from fear.*

Num. 38. To these verbs add, *nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, nascor, creor, afficio, consto, prosëquo, &c.*

NOTE. That *potior* sometimes governs the gen. *as, potivi hostium, to get his enemies into his power. Potiri rerum, to have the chief rule.*

Num. 39. Such as these, *accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet, libet, licet, placet, displicet, vacat, restat, prestat, liquet, nocet, dolet, sufficit, &c.* Together with the dat. they have commonly an infin. after them, which is supposed to supply the place of a nom. before them

† *At mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, ponuntur in accusativo plurali; ut,*

*Non † mea * refert.*

‡ Excep. 2. *Hæc quinque, misêret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, et piget, regunt accusativum personæ, cum genitivo rei; ut,*

* *Misêret † me †† tui.*

* *Pœnitet † me †† peccati.*

† *Tædet * me †† vitæ.*

‡ Excep. 3. *Hæc quatuor, decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, regunt accusativum personæ cum infinitivo; ut,*

* *Delectat † me †† studere.*

*Non * decet † te †† rixari.*

§ 3. *Regimen infinitivi, participiorum, gerundiorum et supinorum.*

REG. X.

Unum verbum regit aliud in infinitivo; ut,

* *Cupio † discere.*

REG. XI.

Participia gerundia, et supina, regunt casum suorum verborum; ut,

* *Amans † virtutem.*

* *Carens † fraude.*

But mea, tua, sua, nostra, 41 vestra, are put in the accusative plural; as,

I am not concerned.

Excep. 2. These five, 42 misêret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet, and piget govern the acc. of a person, with the gen. of a thing; as,

I pity you.

I repent of my sin.

I am weary of my life.

Excep. 3. These four, 43 decet, delectat, juvat, oportet, govern the acc. of the person with the infin.; as,

I delight to study.

It does not become you to scold.

§ 3. *The government of the infinitive participles, gerunds and supines.*

RULE X.

One verb governs another in the infin.; as,

I desire to learn.

RULE XI.

Participles, gerunds, and 45 supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Loving virtue.

Wanting guilt.

Num. 42. NOTE. That this gen. is frequently turned into the infin. as, *pœnitet me peccasse; tædit me vivere;* and so they fall in with the following rule.

Num. 43. NOTE. That *oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mood, *ut* being understood; as, *oportet facias,* (you must do it) for *oportet te facere.*

Attinet, pertinet and *spectat,* when used impersonally (which rarely happens) have the acc. with *ad,* as was observed above, page 103.

Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by adj. as, *cupidus et cupiens discere.*

1. GERUNDIA.

46 1. Gerundium in DUM nominativi casus cum verbo [est] regit dativum; ut,

* *Vivendum est* * *mihi recte.*

* *Moriendum est* † *omnibus.*

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à substantivis vel adjectivis; ut,

* *Tempus* † *legendi.*

* *Cupidus* † *discendi.*

48 3. Gerundium in DO dativi casus regitur ab adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem significantibus; ut,

Charta * *utilis* † *scribendo.*

49 4. Gerundium in DUM accusativi casus regitur à præpositionibus *ad* vel *inter*; ut, *Promptus* * *ad* † *audiendum.* *Attentus* * *inter* † *docendum.*

1. GERUNDS.

1. The gerund in DUM of the nominative case, with the verb [est] governs the dative. as,

I must live well.

All must die.

2. The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Time of reading.

Desirous to learn.

3. The gerund in DO of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Paper useful for writing.

4. The gerund in DUM of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as, Ready to hear.

Attentive in time of teaching

NOTE. That the verb *cæpit* or *cæperunt* is sometimes understood; as, *omnes mihi invidere*; supple *cæperunt*, they all began to envy me.

Num. 46. This dat. is frequently understood; as, *eundem est* (supple *nobis*) we must go.

NOTE. That this gerund always imports necessity, and the dat. after it is the person on whom the necessity lies.

Num. 47. 1. The sub. are such as these, *amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido, &c.*

2. The adj. are generally verbals, mentioned Num. 14.

Num. 48. The adj. of fitness is often understood; as, *non est solvendo*; he is not able to pay, (supple *aptus* or *par*.)

NOTE. That sometimes this gerund is governed by a verb; as, *Epidicum quærendæ operam dabo*, I'll endeavour to find out Epidicus, Plaut.

Num. 49. NOTE 1. That it hath sometimes, but very rarely, the preposition *ob* and *ante*; as, *ob absolvendum munus*, for finishing your task, Cic. *Ante domandum*, before they are tamed or broken, Virg. speaking of horses.

5. Gerundium in DO ablativi casus regitur à præpositionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex, vel in*; ut,

*Pœna * à † peccando absterret.*

‡ Vel sine præpositione, ut ablativus modi vel causæ; ut,

*Memoria † excolendo * augetur.*

* *Defessus sum † ambulando.*

6. Gerundia accusativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in participia in DUS, quæ cum suis substantivis in genere, numero et casu concordant; ut,

Petendum est pacem.

Tempus petendi pacem.

Ad petendum pacem.

A petendo pacem.

SUPINA.

‡ 1. Supinum in UM ponitur post verbum motus; ut,

* *Abiit † deambulatum.*

5. The gerund in DO of 50 the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a, ab, de, e, ex, or in*; as,

Punishment frightens from sinning.

‡ Or without a preposition as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

The memory is improved by exercising it.

I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerunds governing the 52 accusative are elegantly turned into the participles in DUS, which agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

Petenda est pax.

Tempus petendæ pacis.

Ad petendam pacem.

A petenda pace.

SUPINES.

1. The supine in UM is 53 put after a verb of motion; as, He hath gone to walk.

NOTE 2. That what was the gerund in *dum* of the nominative with the verb, *est fuit, &c.* becomes the acc. with *esse*; as, *omnibus moriendum esse novimus*: we know that all must die.

Num. 52. Add to these the gerunds of *fungor, fruor, and potior*.

These participles in *dus* are commonly called Gerundives.

NOTE 1. That the sub. must always be of the same case that the gerund was of.

NOTE 2. That because of its noisy sound, the gerund in *di* is seldom changed into the gen. plural; but either the acc. is retained; as, *studio patres vestros videndi*, rather than *patrum vestrorum videndorum*; or it is turned into the genitive plural, without changing the gerund; as, *patrum vestrorum videndi studio*. Thus *valla* and *farnabius*; but see my Gram. maj. vol. 2. p. 276.

Num. 53. The supine in *um* is elegantly used with the verb *eo*, when we signify that one sets himself about the doing of a

§ 2. *Sapientum* in *U* ponitur post nomen adjectivum; ut,
* *Facile* † *dictu*.

2. The supine in *U* is put after an adj. noun; as,
Easy to tell, or to be told.

§ 4. CONSTRUCTIO CIRCUMSTANTIARUM.

§ 4. THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES. (a)

1 *Causa, modus et instrumentum*.

1. The cause, manner and instrument.

thing; as, *in mea vita tu laudem is quæsitum?* are you going to advance your reputation at the hazard of my life? *Ter.* And this is the reason why this supine with *iri* taken impersonally supplies the place of the future of the infinitive passive.

SOME GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

NOTE 1. That participles, gerunds and supines have a twofold construction; one as they partake of the nature of verbs, by which they govern a certain case, after them; another as they partake of the nature of nouns, and consequently are subject to the same rules with them; thus,

1. A participle is always an adj. agreeing with its sub. by *Num.* 1.

2. A gerund is a sub. and construed as follows: (1.) That in *dum* of the nom. by *Num.* 2. Of the accus. by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di* by *Num.* 11, or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the dat. by *Num.* 16, of the abl. by *Num.* 69, 71, or 55.

3. A supine is also a sub. (1.) That in *um*, governed by *ad* understood by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u*, governed by *in* understood by *Num.* 71.

NOTE 2. That the present of the infin. active, the first supine and the gerund in *dum*, with the preposition *ad*, are thus distinguished: the supine is used after verbs of motion: the infin. after any other verbs: the gerund in *dum*, with *ad* after adj. nouns. But these last are frequently to be met with after verbs of motion; and poets use also the infin. after adj.

NOTE 3. That the present of the infin. passive and the last supine, are thus distinguished. The supine hath always an adj. before it; which the infin. hath not, unless (as I said) among poets.

(*) Adjective nouns, but especially verbs, have frequently some circumstances going along with them in discourse, the most considerable whereof, with respect to construction, are these five: 1. The cause or reason why any thing is done.

REG. XII.

‡ *Causa, modus et instrumentum* ponuntur in ablativo; ut,

* *Palleo metu.*

* *Fecit suo † more*

* *Scribo † calamo.*

2. LOCUS.

REG. XIII.

‡ 1. *Nomen oppidi* ponitur in genitivo, cum quæstio fit per *UBI*; ut,

* *Vixit † Romæ.*

* *Mortuus est † Londini.*

RULE XII.

The cause, manner and instrument are put in the ablativo; as,

I am pale for fear

He did it after his own way.

I write with a pen.

2. PLACE.

RULE XIII.

The name of a town is put in the genitive, when the question is made by UBI, (where;) as,

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

2. The way or manner how it is done. 3. The instrument or thing wherewith it is done. 4. The place where. And 5 The time when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE 1. That the cause is known by the question *cur* or *quare*? why? wherefore? &c. the manner by the question *quomodo*? how? and the instrument by the question *quocum*? wherewith?

NOTE 2. That the preposition is frequently expressed with the cause and manner; as, *præ gaudio*, for joy. *Propter amorem*, for love. *Cb culpam*, for a fault. *Cum summo labôre*, with great labour. *Per dedêcus*, with disgrace. But the preposition (*cum*) is never added to the instrument: for we cannot say, *scribo cum calamo*; *cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the instrument, and what is called the ablativus comitatus, or ablativo of concomitancy, i. e. signifying that something was in company with another; for then the preposition (*cum*) is generally expressed; as, *ingressus est cum gladio*, he entered with a sword, i. e. having a sword with or about him.

NOTE 4. That to cause some refer the matter of which any thing is made; as, *clypeus ære fabricatus*, a shield made of brass; but (except with the poets) the prep. is for the most part expressed.

NOTE 5. That to manner some refer the adjunct, i. e. some thing joined to another thing; as, *terra amœna floribus*, a land pleasant with flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, a hill white with snow.

NOTE 6. That to instrument some refer *confecior dolore*,

57 † Excep. Si verò sit tertiæ declinationis, aut pluralis numeri, in ablativo effertur; ut,

* *Habitat † Carthagine.*

* *Studuit † Parisiis.*

58 † 2. Cùm quæstio fit per QUO, nomen oppidi in accusativo regitur; ut,

* *Venit † Edinburgum.*

* *Profectus est † Athēnas.*

59 † 3. Si quæretur per UNDE vel QUA, nomen oppidi ponitur in ablativo; ut,

* *Discessit † Aberdoniâ.*

* *Laodicæa iter † faciebât.*

Excep. But if it be of the third declension, or of the plural number, it is expressed in the ablativo; as,

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

2. *When a question is made by QUO, (whither,) the name of a town is governed in the accusative; as,*

He came to Edinburgh.

He went to Athens.

3. *If the question be made by UNDE, (whence,) or QUA (by or through what place,) the name of a town is put in the ablativo; as,*

He went from Aberdeen.

He went through Laodicea.

inediâ, &c.—Prosequor odio, amore, &c. Afficio te honore, contumeliâ, &c. Lacesso verbis aspèris, &c.

Num. 56. &c. NOTE 1. That the prep. is frequently added to names of towns, (especially when the question is *quo?* *unde?* or *qua?*) and sometimes omitted to names of countries, provinces, &c.

NOTE 2. That *humi*, *militiæ* and *belli* are also used in the gen. when the question is made by *ubi?* as, *procumbit humi*, he lies down on the ground. *Domi militiæque una fuimus*, we were together both at home and abroad, or in peace and war, Ter. *Bellique domi agitabatur*, was managed both in peace and war, Sallust.

NOTE 3. That when the name of a town is put in the gen. *in urbe* is understood, and therefore we cannot say, *natus est Romæ urbis nobilis*, but *urbe nobili*.

¶ These rules concerning names of towns may be thus expressed:

The name of a town after	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{in or at} \\ \textit{to or unto} \\ \textit{from or through} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{is put} \\ \textit{in the} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Gen. or abl.} \\ \textit{Acc.} \\ \textit{Abl.} \end{array} \right\}$

† i. e. When it is of the third declension, or of the plural number. But when *at* signifies about or near a place, we make use of the prep. *ad*; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam gesserat*, Virg.

‡ 4. *Domus et rus eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina construuntur*; ut,

4. *Domus and rus are 60 construed the same way as names of towns*; as,

Manet domi, he stays at home. *Domum revertitur*, he returns home. *Domo a cessitus sum*, I am called from home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri*, he lives in the country. *Abiit rus*, he is gone to the country. *Rediit rure*, he is returned from the country.

5. *Nominibus regionum, provinciarum et aliorum locorum, non dictis, præpositio ferè additur*; ut,

5. *To names of countries, 61 provinces, and other places, not mentioned, the preposition is generally added*; as,

UBI? *Natus in Scotiâ, in Fisa, in urbe, &c.*

QUO? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fisam, in (vel ad) urbem, &c.*

UNDE? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fisa, ex urbe, &c.*

QUA? *Transit per Scotiam, per Fisam, per urbem, &c.*

ANNOTATIO.

‡ *Distantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in accusativo, interdum et in ablativo*; ut,

The distance of one place 62 from another is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Glasgva * distat Edinburgo triginta † millia passuum.*

‡ *Iter vel † itinere unius diei.*

Glasgow is thirty miles distant from Edinburgh.

One-day's journey.

3. TEMPUS.

REG. XIV.

‡ 1. *Tempus ponitur in ablativo, cum quæstio fit per QUANDO*; ut,

3. TIME.

RULE XIV.

* *Venit † hora tertia.*

‡ 2. *Cum quæstio fit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in accusativo vel ablativo; sed sæpius in accusativo*; ut,

1. *Time is put in the ab- 63 lative, when the question is made by QUANDO, (when;)* as,

He came at three o'clock.

3. *When the question is 64 made by QUAMDIU, (how long,) time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative*; as,

He staid a few days.

He was away six months.

* *Mansit paucos † dies. Sex † mensibus. * absuit.*

Num. 63. and 64. These two rules may be thus expressed:
1. Nouns that denote a precise term of Time are put in the ablative.

2. Nouns that denote continuance of Time are put in the accusative or ablative.

De Ablativo Absoluto.

REG. XV.

65. † Substantivum cum participio, quorum casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in ablativo absoluto; ut,
* Sole † oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

* Opere † peracto ludemus.

III. Constructio vocum indeclinabilium.

1. ADVERBIORUM.

66 † I. Adverbia junguntur verbis, participiis, nominibus, et aliis adverbis; ut,
Bene scribit.

Of the Ablative Absolute.

RULE XV.

A substantive with a participle, whose case depends upon no other word, is put in the ablative absolute; as,

The sun rising (or while the sun riseth) darkness flies away.

Our work being finished (or when our work is finished) we will play.

III. The construction of words indeclinable.

1. OF ADVERBS.

1. *Adverbs are joined to verbs, participles, nouns, and other adverbs; as,*

He writes well.

Num. 65. NOTE 1. This abl. is called ABSOLUTE or independent, because it is not directed or determined by any other word; for if the sub. (which is principally to be regarded) hath a word before that should govern it, or a verb coming after, to which it should be a nom. then the rule does not take place.

NOTE 2. That having, being, or a word ending in *ing*, are the ordinary signs of this ablative.

NOTE 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true substantive) when a part. perfect is Englished by having, we are carefully to advert whether it be passive or deponent. If it be passive, we are to change it into being, its true English. If it be deponent, there needs no change, for having is the proper English of it. The use of this note will appear by the following example:

James, having said these things, departed. } *Jacobus, hæc locutus, abiit.* Dep.

James, these things being said, departed. } *Jacobus, his dictis, abiit.* Pass

Having promised a great reward. } *Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep.

A great reward being promised. } *Magnâ mercede promissâ.* Pass.

NOTE 4. That when there is no participle expressed in Latin, *existente* (being) is understood; as, *me puero*, I being a boy. *Saturno rege*, Saturn being king. *Civitate nondum liberâ*, the state not being yet free.

NOTE 5. That the participle may be resolved into *dum*, *cum*, *quando*, *si*, *postquam*, &c. (while, seeing, when, if, after) with the verb, either in English or in Latin

Fortiter pugnans.

Servus egregiè fidelis.

Satis bene.

‡ 2. Adverbia quædam temporis, loci et quantitatis regunt genitivum; ut,

* *Pridie illius † diei.*

* *Ubique † gentium.*

* *Satis est † verborum.*

‡ 3. Quædam adverbia derivata regunt casum primitivorum; ut,

† *Omnium * elegantissime loquitur.*

*Vivere * convenienter † nature.*

2. PRÆPOSITIONUM.

1. Præpositiones, *ad, apud, ante, &c.* accusativum regunt; ut,

* *Ad † patrem.*

2. Præpositiones, *a, ab, abs, &c.* regunt ablativum; ut,

* *A † patre.*

3. Præpositiones, *in, sub, super* et *subter*, regunt accusativum, cum motus AD locum significatur; ut,

*Bo * in † scholam.*

* *Sub † mœnia tendit, Virg.*

*Incidit * super † agmina, Id.*

*Ducit * subter † fastigia tecti, Id.*

¶ At si motus vel quies IN loco significetur, *in* et *sub* regunt ablativum; *super* et *subter* vel accusativum vel ablativum; ut,

*Sedeo vel discurro * in † schola.*

*Recubo vel ambulo * sub † umbra.*

*Sedens * super † arma, Virg.*

† *Fronde * super viridi, Id.*

Fighting bravely.

A servant remarkably faithful.

Well enough.

2. *Some adverbs of time, place and quantity, govern the genitive; as,*

The day before that day.

Every where.

There is enough of words.

3. *Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,*

He speaks the most elegantly of all.

To live agreeably to nature.

2. OF PREPOSITIONS.

1. *The prepositions ad, apud, ante, &c. govern the accusative; as,*

To the father.

2. *The prepositions a, ab, abs, &c. govern the ablative; as,*

From the father.

3. *The prepositions in, sub, super and subter, govern the accusative when motion TO a place is signified; as,*

I go into the school.

He goes under the walls.

It fell upon the troops.

He brings (him) under the roof of the house.

¶ *But if motion or rest IN a place be signified, in and sub govern the ablatives; super and subter either the accusative or abl.; as,*

I sit or run up and down in the school.

I lie or walk under the shadow.

Sitting above the arms.

Upon the green grass

Vena * *subter* † *cutem* *dispersæ*, Plin.

* *Subter* † *littore*, Catul.

72 4. ¶ Præpositio in compositione eundem sæpe casum regit quem extra ; ut,

* *Adeamus* † *scholam*.

* *Exeamus* † *schola*.

The veins dispersed under the skin.

Beneath the shore.

4. A preposition often times governs the same case in composition that it does without it ; as,

Let us go to the school.

Let us go out of the school.

¶ The prepositions, with the cases they govern are contained in the following verses :

1. Hæ quartum adsciscunt casum sibi præposituræ ;
Ad, penes, adversum, cis, citra, adversus, *et* extra ;
Ultra, post, præter, juxta, per, pone, secundum,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, propter, *et* intra ;
Quis addas contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.
2. Hæ sextum poscunt ; A, cum, tenus, abs, ab, *et* absque,
Atque palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, sine, coram.
3. Sub, super, in, subter, quantum sextumque requirunt.

NOTE 1. That *versus* and *usque* are put after their cases ; as *Italiam versus*, towards Italy ; *oceānum usque*, as far as the ocean. But (as we have already observed, page 84) these are properly adverbs, the preposition *ad* being understood.

NOTE 2. That *tenus* is also put after its case ; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin.

NOTE 3. That *tenus* governs the genitive plural. 1. When the word wants the singular ; as, *cumarum tenus*. As far as (the town) *Cumæ*.—2. When we speak of things of which we have naturally but two ; as, *crurum tenus*, up to the legs.

NOTE 4. That *a* and *e* are put before consonants. *ab* and *ex* before vowels and consonants ; *abs* before *t* and *q*.

NOTE 5. That *subter* hath very rarely the ablative, and only among poets.

NOTE 6. That in English *in* is commonly the sign of the ablative into of the accusative.

NOTE 7. *In* for *erga*, *contra*, *per*, *supra*, *ad*, &c. governs the accusative ; as, *amor in patriam*. *Quid ego in te commisi?* *Creavit in dies singulos*. *Imperium regum in proprios greges*, Horat. *Pisces in cœnam empti*. But *in* for *inter* governs the ablative ; as, *in amicis habere*, Sallust.

Sub for *circa* governs the accusative, as, *sub cœnam*.

Super for *ultra*, *præter* and *inter*, governs the accusative, as, *super Garamantas*, Virg. *Super gratiam suam*, Sallust. *In sermo*

3. INTERJECTIONUM.

§ 1. Interjectiones, *O, heu, et proh*, regunt vocativum, interdum accusativum; ut,

- * *O formōse † puer!*
- * *Heu † me misērum!*

§ 2. *Hei et Væ* regunt dativum; ut,

- Hei † mihi!*
- * *Væ † vobis.*

4. CONJUNCTIONUM.

* 1. Conjunctiones, *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, et quædam aliæ, connectunt similes casus et modos; ut,

*Honōra † patrem * et † matrem.*

*Nec † scribit * nec † legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam* et *dummōdo* subjunctivo modo fere semper adhærent; ut,

- Lego * ut † discam.*
- * *Utinam † sapiēs.*

3. OF INTERJECTIONS.

1. The interjections *O, heu, and proh* govern the vocative, and sometimes the accusative; as,

- O fair boy!
- Ah wretch that I am!

2. *Hei and Væ* govern the dative; as,

- Ah me!
- Wo to you.

4. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The conjunctions *et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, coupled like cases and moods; as,

Honour your father and mother.

He neither writes nor reads.

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam* and *dummōdo* are for the most part joined with the subjunctive mood; as,

- I read that I may learn
- I wish you were wise.

re super cœnam nato, Suet. For *de*, it governs the abl. as, *super hæc re nimis*, Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE. That this rule only takes place when the preposition may be dissolved from the verb, and put before the case by itself; as, *allōquor patrem*, i. e. *loquor ad patrem*. And even then the preposition is frequently repeated; as, *exire è finibus suis*, Cæs.

Num. 75. To these add *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, and adverbs of likeness. The reason of this construction is because the words so coupled depend all upon the same word, which is expressed to one of them, and understood to the other.

Num. 76. To these add all indefinite words, that is, interrogatives, whether nouns, pron. adv. or conjunc. when taken in a doubtful or indefinite sense; such as, *quis, uter, quantum, &c. Ubi, quo, unde, &c. Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne, &c.*

(See page 82 and 87.) They generally become indefinites, when another word comes before them in the sentence, such as, *scio*, *nescio*, *video*, *intelligo*, *dubito*, and the like; as, *ubi est frater tuus?* *Nescio ubi sit.* *An venturus est?* *Dubito an venturus sit.*

Ne the adverb of forbidding, requires the imper. or subjunct. as, *ne time*, or *ne timeas*. See p. 57.

Dum, *quum*, *quod*, *si*, *sin*, *ni*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *priusquam*, *simulac*, *siquidem*, *quandoquidem*, &c. are joined sometimes with the indic. and sometimes with the subjunc.

SYNTAXEOS

SYNOPSIS;

SIVE,

Genuinæ et maximè necessariæ constructionis regulæ, ad quas cæteræ omnes reducuntur

AXIOMATA.

I. Omnis oratio constat ex nomine et verbo.

II. Omnis nominativus habet suum verbum expressum vel suppressum.

III. Omne verbum finitum habet suum nominativum expressum vel suppressum.

IV. Omne adjectivum habet suum substantivum expressum vel suppressum.

Sex casuum constructio.

I. Omne verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum, concordat cum nominativo, expresso vel suppresso, in numero et persona; ut,

A SUMMARY OF

SYNTAX;

OR,

The true and most necessary rules of construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

FIRST PRINCIPLES.

I. Every speech [or sentence] consists of a noun and a verb.

II. Every nominative hath its own verb expressed or understood.

III. Every finite verb hath its own nominative expressed or understood.

IV. Every adjective hath its own substantive expressed or understood.

The construction of the six cases.

I. Every verb of the finite mood, expressed or understood, agrees with its nominative, expressed or understood, in number and person; as,

Puer legit.

[Homines] aiunt.

Romani [coeperunt] festinare.

II. Omnis genitivus regitur à substantivo expresso vel suppresso; ut,

Liber fratris.

Est [officium] patris.

III. Dativus acquisitionis [i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur] cuius nomini aut verbo expresso vel suppresso jungitur; ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dedisti?

[Dedi] Petro.

Utilis bello.

Non est [aptus] solvendo.

IV. Omnis accusativus regitur à verbo activo, vel * præpositione expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Amo Deum,

et (amo) parentes.

Ad patrem.

Abiit (ad) Londinum.

¶ Aut infinitivo præponitur expressus vel suppressus; ut,

Dicit se scribere.

Licet mihi (me) esse bonum.

V. Omnis vocativus absolute ponitur, additâ nonnunquam interjectione O; ut,

O Dave.

Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis ablativus regitur à * præpositione expressa vel suppressa; ut,

A puero.

Exultat (præ) gaudio.

The boy reads.

They say.

The Romans made haste.

II. *Every genitive is governed by a substantive expressed or understood; as,*

The book of my brother.

It is the duty of a father.

III. *The dative of acquisition [i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] is joined to any noun or verb expressed or understood; as,*

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it?

To Peter.

Profitable for war.

He is not able to pay.

IV. *Every accusative is governed by an active verb, or a * preposition expressed or understood; as,*

I love God;

and my parents.

To the father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ *Or is put before the infinitive expressed or understood; as,*

He says that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. *Every vocative is placed absolutely, the interjection O being sometimes added; as,*

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. *Every ablative is governed by a * preposition expressed or understood; as,*

From a child.

He leaps for joy.

* See p. 73, and Larger Syntax, p. 117 and 118.

APPENDIX.

I. Omne adjectivum concordat cum substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in genere, numero et casu; ut,

Bonus vir.

Triste (negotium.)

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in casu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis infinitivus regitur à verbo vel nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Cupio discere.

Dignus amari.

Populus (cœpit) mirari.

I. Every adjective agrees with a substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case; as,

A good man.

A sad thing.

II. Substantives signifying the same thing agree in case; as,

The Lord God.

III. Every infinitive is governed by a verb or noun expressed or understood; as,

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The people wondered.

EXPLANATION.

All construction is either true or apparent, or, (as grammarians express it) just or figurative. True construction is founded upon the essential properties of words, and is almost the same in all languages. Apparent construction entirely depends upon custom, which either for elegance or despatch, leaves out a great many words otherwise necessary to make a sentence perfectly full and grammatical. The first is comprised in these few fundamental rules, and more fully branched out in the larger syntax. The other is also interspersed through the larger syntax, but distinguished from that which is true by a (‡).

The cases mentioned in the rules of the larger syntax immediately discover the rules of this summary to which they respectively belong; those that are true without any ellipsis; those that are figurative by having their ellipsis supplied as follows, as they are numbered in the margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Num. 13, supple *negotium*. Num. 14 and 47, sup. *de causa, gratiâ, or in re, negotio*. Num. 15 sup. *è numero*. Num. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Num. 22 and sup. *officium, negotium, &c.* Num. 24, sup. 1, *sat.* taken from the verb. 2. *de causa, &c.* Num. 29. sup. *memoriam, notitia, &c.* Num. 30. sup. *de crimine, pœna, &c.* Num. and 36. sup. *pro re, or pretio aris*. Num. 40, sup. *inter n. tia, and res (fert) se ad negotia*. Num. 42. sup. *res, n.*

stam, &c. Num. 56, sup. *in urbe*. Num. 60, *domi*, sup. *in oculis*. Num. 66, these adv. stem to be taken for sub. nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Num. 73, sup. *malum est*; or these interj. are used as subst.

To RULE IV. belong Num. 18, 53 and 62, sup. *ad*. Num. 33, sup. *quod ad*. Num. 41. i. e. *est inter mea negotia*; *refert* (or *res fert*) *se ad mea negotia*, &c. Num. 58. sup. *ad*. or *in*. Num. 64. sup. *per*. Num. 73. sup. *sentio*, *lugeo*, &c.

To RULE VI. belong Num. 12. spp. *e*, *ex*, *cum*, &c. Num. 19, sup. *præ*. Num. 20. sup. *de*; *e*, *ex*, *cum*, &c. Num. 21, sup. *a*, *ab*, &c. Num. 34, sup. *pro*. Num. 37, 38. sup. *à*, *abs*, *de*, *e*, *ex*. Num. 51 and 55, sup. *præ*, *cum*, *à*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*, &c. Num. 54. sup. *en* or *de*. Num. 57. sup. *in*. Num. 59. sup. *à*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*. Num. 62. sup. *in*. Num. 64. sup. *in* or *pro*. Num. 65. sup. *sub*, *cum*, *à*, *ab*.

NOTE 1. That under verbs must also be comprehended participles, gerunds and supines, because the general signification of the verb is included in them.

NOTE 2. That as a consequence of this, a learned grammarian ingeniously supposes that the dat. and infin. are always governed by a verb, and that when they seem to be governed by a noun, the participle *existens* is understood; as, *utilis*, (*existens*) *bello*. *Pollio præsidium* (*existens*) *reis*. *Dignus* (*existens*) *amari*.

NOTE 3. That the voc. is properly no part of a sentence, but the case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say: Therefore when the voc. is put before the imp. as frequently happens, the nom. *tu* or *vos* is understood; and that even though these words be already expressed in the voc. as, *tu Jacobe lege*, i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu lege*.

NOTE 4. That the voc. is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the interjection *O*: See Vossius, Lib. VII. Cap. 69. and Sanctius, Lib. IV. *de Ellipsi* verb. *Audio et Narro*.

CHAP. II.

OF EXPOSITION OR RESOLUTION.

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a sentence, and placing all the parts of it, whether expressed or understood, in their proper order, that the true sense and meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either simple or compound.

1. A SIMPLE sentence is that which hath one finite verb in it.

2. A **COMPOUND** sentence is that which hath two or more such verbs in it, joined together by some couples.

These **COUPLES** are of four sorts, 1. The relative *qui*. 2. Some comparative words, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis tam, quam, &c.* 3. Indefinite words, (See page 89 and 119.) 4. Conjunctions.

In a simple sentence there are two things to be considered, 1. Its essential. 2. Its accidental parts.

1. The essential parts of a sentence are a nominative and a verb.

2. The accidental parts are of four kinds, 1. Such as excite attention, as the vocative and exciting particles; as, *O, en, ecce, heus, &c.* 2. Such as serve to introduce a sentence, or to show its dependence upon what was said before; as, *jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea, &c.* 3. Such as limit the general and indefinite signification either of the nominative or verb, and these are substantive nouns. 4. Such as qualify and explain them, viz. adjectives, adverbs, and prepositions, with their cases. Sometimes a part of a compound sentence supplies the place of those two last kind of words.

II. The **ORDER** of words in a sentence is either natural or artificial.

1. **NATURAL** order is when the words of a sentence naturally follow one after another in the same order with the conceptions of our minds.

ARTIFICIAL order is when words are so arranged as to render them most agreeable to the ear; but so as the sense be not thereby obscured.

III. A sentence may be resolved from the artificial into the natural order by the following rules:

1. Take the vocative, exciting and introductory words where they are found.

2. The **NOMINATIVE**.

3. Words limiting or explaining it, i. e. words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another successively (till you come to the verb) where they are found.

4. The **VERB**.

5. Words limiting or explaining it, &c. where they are found, to the end of the sentence.

6. Supply every where the words that are understood.

7. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE. *Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum : sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptis que lætabere.* Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then my (son) Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear unto me ; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence is resolved into these five simple sentences.

1. *Igitur mi [fili] Cicero, [mi] vale,* 2. & [tu] *persuade tibi te esse quidem carissimum [mihi] mihi ;* 3. *sed [tu persuade tibi te] fore cariorem [filium mihi in] multo [negotio,]* 4. *si [tu] lætabere talibus monumentis,* 5. & [si tu lætabere talibus] *præceptis.*

NOTE 1. That interrogative words stand always first in a sentence, unless a preposition come before them.

NOTE 2. That negative words stand immediately before the verb.

NOTE 3. That relatives are placed before the word by which they are governed, unless it be a preposition.

NOTE 4. That the subjunctive mood is used in compound sentences.

NOTE 5. That the parts of a compound sentence are separated from one another by these marks called Interpunctions.

1. Those that are smaller named clauses, by this mark (,) called a comma. 2. Those that are greater, named members, by this mark (:) called colon, or this (;) called a semicolon. 3. When a sentence is thrown in, that has little or no connexion with the rest, it is inclosed within what we call a parenthesis marked thus ().

But when the sentence, whether simple or compound, is fully ended, if it be a plain affirmation or negation, it is closed with this mark (.) called a point. If a question be asked, with this mark (?) called a point of interrogation. If wonder or some other sudden passion be signified, with this mark (!) called a point of admiration.

PART IV.

OF PROSODY.

PROSODY teaches the quantity of syllables.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of syllables, and the measures of verse, is called *Prosody*.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*.

A common syllable is that which, in verse, is sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as *mēus*, *alius*; so *nihil*; *h* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English *create* *behave*.

Except. 1. *I* is long in *fio*, *fiēbam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*, as, *fieri*, *fierim*.

Except. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension is long, as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *ēcr*, *dīus*,

ſheu, and the penultima in *ſulāi, terrāi, &c.* in *Pompēi, Cāi*, and ſuch like words; but we ſometimes find *Pompēi* in two ſyllables.

Except. 3. The firſt ſyllable in *ſhe* and *Diana* is common; ſo likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius, unius, &c.* to be read long in proſe. *Alis* in the genitive is always long; *alterius*, ſhort.

In Greek words, a vowel before another is ſometimes ſhort; as; *Dandē, idēa, Simois, &c.*; ſometimes long; as, *Lycōn, Cytherēa, Medēa, Darius, Amphion, Ixion, Elegia, Antiochi, Alexandria, &c.* But *corea, platea, canopeum*, and *Malea*, a proper name, are common.

In English it is alſo often lengthened; as in *ſcience, idēa*.

2. A vowel before two conſonants, or before a double conſonant, is long (by poſition, as it is called;) as, *arma, fālo, ſaxi, gāza, māior*; the compounds of *jugam* excepted; as, *bijūgus quadriūgus, &c.*

When the foregoing word ends in a ſhort vowel, and the following begins with two conſonants or a double one, that vowel is ſometimes lengthened by poſition; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date vela, scandite muros.—Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common, as the firſt ſyllable in *agris*, and the middle in *pharetra, podagra*; but in proſe we uſually pronounce it ſhort.

To make this rule hold, three things are requiſite. The vowel muſt be naturally ſhort, the mute muſt go before the liquid, and be in the ſame ſyllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verſe, becauſe *a* in *pāter* is naturally ſhort, or always ſo by cuſtom: but *a* in *matris* is always long, becauſe long by nature or cuſtom in *mater*. In like manner the penult in *ſalūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long; becauſe they are derived from *ſatis, ſalūtis, ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo, &c.* is long by poſition, becauſe the mute and the liquid are in different ſyllables.

L and *r* only are conſidered as liquids in Latin words: *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

3. A contracted ſyllable is long; as, *cōgo* for *coāgo*; *alius* for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiūcen*; *it*, for *iit*, *sōdes*, for *si audeo*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ, &c.*

4. A diphthong is always long; as, *Aurum, Cæſar, Eubœa, &c.* Only *præ* in compoſition before a vowel is ſhort; as, *præire*.

We often find two vowels in the ſame ſyllable ſhort; as, *lūquimus, ſanguinis, &c.*; but theſe commonly are not reckoned diphthongs, perhaps improperly.

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

1. Concerning the FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two-Syllables.

5. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *vēni, vīdi, vīci*.

Except these six, *bībi, scīdi, from scīdo; fīdi, from fīdo; ūli, dēdi, stēti*.

6. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *visum, cāsum, mōtum*.

Except *sātum, from sēro; citum, from cīo; litum, from lino; ritum, from rīno; stātum, from sisto; itum, from eo; dātum, from do; rūtum, from the compounds of ruo; vitum, from vūo; rātus, from reor*.

Preterites doubled.

7. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as, *cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpīli, pēpēri, dīdīci, ūtūdi*; except *cēcīdi, from cēdo; pēpēdi, from pēdo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēfelli, tētēdi, &c.*

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex, regis*. Here *re* is called the increase or crement, and goes through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener, generi, generōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless when one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fractūi: res, rei*; which fall under Rule 1.

Second Declension.

8. Nouns of the second declension which increase, shorten the penultima; as, *gener, generi; vir, viri; sator, satori* except *idē, ibēri*, and its compounds *celtibēr, celtibēri*.

Third Declension.

Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *s* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u* short; as, *pistātis*, *hoxēris*; *mulieris*, *lapidis*, *marmaris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in *a* shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma*, *-ātis*; *pœma*, *-ātis*.

O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis*, and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo*, *-inis*; *Virgo*, *-inis*; *Anio*, *-ēnis*; *Cicero*, *-ōnis*. Gentile or partial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macedo*, *-ēnis*; *Saxo*, *-ēnis*: some are long; as, *Suescōnis*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittōnes* is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens *itis*; *Hydromēli*, *-itis*. *Ec* lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Halec*, *-ēcis*.

A noun in *d* shortens the crement; as, *David*, *-īdis*.

L.

Masculines in *al* shorten *ālis*; as, *Sal*, *-sālis*; *Hannibā*, *ālīs*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal*, *-ālis*.

Sōlis, from *Sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, *-ēlis*. Other nouns in *l* shorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, *-īlis*; *consui*, *-ūlis*.

N.

Nouns in *on* vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, *-ōnis*; *Chiron*, *-ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Memnon*, *-ōnis*; *Actæon*, *-ōnis*.

En shortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, *-inis*, *tibicen*, *īnis*. Other nouns in *n* lengthens the penult. *An*, *-anis*; as, *Titan*, *-ānis*. *En*, *-ēnis*; as, *Siren*, *-ēnis*: *In*, *-īnis*; as, *dolphin*, *īnis*: *Yn*, *ynis*; as, *Phorcyn*, *-ynis*.

R.

1. Neuters in *ar* lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, *-āris*. Except the following, *bacchar*, *-āris*; *iubar*, *-āris*; *nectar*, *-āris*: also the adjective *par*, *pāris*, and its compounds, *impar*, *-āris*; *dispar*, *-āris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in *r* lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *Nāris*, the name of a river; *fur*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: also *Recher*, *-ēris*; *Byzer*, *-ēris*; *Ser*, *Sēris*; *Iber*, *-ēris*, are proper names.

3. Greek nouns in *ter* lengthen *teris*; as, *crater, -ēris*, *character, -ēris*. Except *æther, -ēris*.

4. Or lengthens *oris*; as, *amor, -ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor, -ōris*; *æquor, -ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*: as, *Hector, -ōris*; *Rhetor, -ōris*: also *arbor, -ōris*: and *memor, -ōris*.

5. Other nouns in *r* shorten the genitive; as, *ar, aris, masc. æs, Cæsar, -āris*; *Hamilcar, -āris*; *lar, lāris*.

Er, eris of any gender; as, *aer, aëris*; *muller, -ēris*; *cadāver, -ēris*; *iter*, anciently *itiner, itinēris*; *verbēris*; from the obsolete *verber*. *Ur, uris*; as, *vultur, -ūris*; *murmur, -ūris*; *yr, yris*; as, *Martyr, -yris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in *as* which have *ātis* lengthen the crement; as, *pietas, -ātis*; *Mæcēnas, -ātis*. Except *anas, -ātis*.

2. Other nouns in *as* shorten the crement; as Greek nouns in *ādis, ātis*, and *ānis*; thus, *Pallas, -ādīs*; *artocreas, -eātīs*; *Melus, -ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas, vādīs*; *mas, māris* but *vas, vāsīs* is long.

ES.

Es shortens the crement; as, *miles, -ētīs*; *Ceres, -ēris*; *pes, -pēdis*.

Except *locuples, -ētes*; *quies, -ētīs*; *mansues, -ētīs*; *hæres, -ēdis*; *merces, -ēdis*.

IS.

Nouns in *is* shorten the crement; as, *lapis, -īdis*; *Sanguis, -īnis*; *Phyllis, -īdis*.

Except *Glis, glīris*; and Latin nouns which have *ītis*: as, *lis, lītis*; *dis, dītis*; *Quiris, -ītis*; *Sannīs, -ītis*; but *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the crement: *Crenis, -īdis*; *Psophis, -īdis*; *Nesis, -īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salāmis*, or *-in*, *Salamīnis*.

OS.

Nouns in *os* lengthen the crement; as, *nepos, -ōtis*; *flos, flōris*. Except *Bos, bōvis*; *compos, -ōtis*; *impos, -ōtis*.

US.

Us shortens the crement; as, *tempus, -ōris*; *tripus, -ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis, ūris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus, udīs*; *jus, jūris*; *salus, -ūtīs*. But *Ligus* has *Līgūris*; the obsolete *pecus, pecūdis*; and *intercus, -ūtīs*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius, -ōris*.

YS.

Y shortens *ydis*, or *ydos*; as, *chlamys*, *-ydis*, or *-ydos*; and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys*, *-ynis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in *s*, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *Cælebs*, *-ïbs*; *inops*, *-öpis*; *hiems*, *-ënis*.

Except *Cyclops*, *-öpis*; *seps*, *sëpis*; *gryps*, *gryphis*; *Cærops*, *-öpis*; *plebs*, *plëbis*; *hydrops*, *-öpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, *-itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in *x*, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; *conjux*, *-ïgis*; *remex*, *-ïgis*; *Allobrox*, *-ögis*; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *lëgis* and *rex*, *rëgis*, are long; and likewise *frügis*.

2. *Ex* shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, *-ïcis*; except *vibex*, *-ïcis*.

3. Other nouns in *x*, lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, *-ïcis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *-ūcis*, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nëcis*, *vïcis*, *prëcis*, *calicis*, *pïcis*, *fornïcis*, *nïvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *præcōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychis*, *Erycis*, and many others whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, *-ācis*, or *-äcis*, *Sandyx*, *ïcis*, or *icis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

10. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O* long, but shorten *I* and *U*; as, *musarum*, *rërum*, *duminorum*; *regibus*, *portibus*; except *bobus* or *bubus*, contracted for *bövbubus*.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the increase or crement; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third* increase.

11. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i* and *u* short; as, *Amāre*, *docëre*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *simus*, *volūmus*

Except *du*, and its compounds of the first conjugation, which have the first increase short; as, *däre, dämus, aabämus, circundäre, venundäb*, &c.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdērunt* and *stētērunt*: and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, *transierītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The first or middle syllables of words, which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*: and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

In the first and middle syllables of words, however, the most frequent mistakes in quantity are committed. They therefore merit particular attention.

REMARKS ON THE QUANTITY OF SOME OTHER FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES OF WORDS.

1. Patronymies in *ides* or *ades* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamīdes, Atlantiādes, &c.* Unless they come from nouns in *eus*: as, *Pelīdes, Tydīdes, &c.*

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *ais, eis, itis, ois, otis, ine, and one*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chrysēis, Aenēis, Memphītis, Latōis, Icarīotas, Nerīare, Arisiōne.* Except *Thebais* and *Phocais*, and *Nereis*, which are common.

3. Adjectives in *acus, icus, idus, and imus*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus, acadēmīcus, lepīdus, legitīmus*: also superlatives; as, *fortissīmus, &c.* Except *opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, padīcus, medīcus, postīcus, fidus, infīdus* (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fidus*, is short) *bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus*: and two superlatives, *imū, priū*.

4. Adjectives in *alis, amus, arue, ivus, orus, osus*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis, urbānus, avārus, æstīvus, decōrus, arēnōsus.* Except *barbārus, opipārus.*

5. Verbal adjectives in *ilis* shorten the penult; as, *agīlis, factīlis, &c.* But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anīlis, civīlis, herīlis, &c.* To these add, *exīlis, subtīlis*: and names of months, *Aprīlis, Quīntīlis, Sextīlis.* Except *humīlis, parīlis*: and also *simīlis.* But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatīlis, volatīlis, umbratīlis, &c.*

6. Adjectives in *inus* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the

penult; as, *amaratīnus, cruciatūs, cedrīnus, fugīvus, oleagīnus; adamantīnus, cristallīnus, crustīnus, pristīnus, &c.*

Other adjectives in *īnus* are long; as, *agīnus, bīnus, Latīnus, marīnus, supīnus, vesperīnus, &c.*

7. Diminutives in *olus, ola, olum*; and *ulus, ula, ulum*, always shorten the penult; as, *urcedulus, siliōla, muscōlum; lectulus, ratiuncūla, corcūlum, &c.*

8. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim, virstim, tributum*. Except *affaiim, perpētīm, and statim*.

9. Desideratives in *urio* shorten the antepenultima, which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *csurio, esuris, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio, liguris; scaturio, scatūris, &c.*

2. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

12. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musā, templā, Tydeā, lampāda*; except the ablative of the first declension; as, *Musā, Æneā*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Æneā, O Pallā*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases, is long; as, *amā, frustrā, prætereā, ergā, intrā*: except *itā, quā, eā, postea, putā*, (adv.) and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā, ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā, &c.*

E.

13. *E* final is short; as, *natē, sedilē, patrē, currē, nempē, antē*.

Except. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions *quē, vē, rē*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē, cē, tē*; as, *suoptē, hujuscē, tutē*.

Except. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliōpē, Anchisē, fidē*. So *rē* and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē, hodiē, pridē, postridiē, quotidiē*: also Greek nouns which want the singular; *cetē, melē, tempē*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *docē, manē*; but *cave, vale, and vide*, are sometimes short.

Except. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē* contracted for *valiāe*: to these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē*. but *benē* and *malē* are short.

I.

14. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī.*

Except. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexā, Amaryllī.*

Except. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase, is common; as, *Pullādi, Minoīdi, Mihi, tibi, sibi* are also common: so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi,* and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

15. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, amo, quando.*

Except. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*: and the dative and ablative sing. of the second declension; as, *librō, dominō*; also Greek nouns; as, *Didō* and *Athō* the genitive of *Athos*; and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quāvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Except. 2. The following words are short; *egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, umbō, modō* with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some *o*, these are also found long.

U and Y.

16. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; *Vultū: Moly.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

17. *B, D, L, R,* and *T*, in the end of a word, make the foregoing vowel short; as, *ab, apūd, semel, precōr, capūt.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *militūm, octo*, Ennius. But by latter poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgo, circūmeo.*

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār, fūr, lar, nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns which have *ērī* in the genitive; *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *aēr, æthēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniël, David.*

C, N.

18. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *ac, sic, non*

The following words are short, *nec* and *donēc*; *forsitān, in, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en* which have *ērī* in the genitive; as, *carmēn, crimēn*; together with several Greek nouns, as, *Ilion, Pyllōn, Alexin.* The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

19. *As, es, and os, in the end of a word, are long; as, Mās, quēs, bonōs.*

The following words are short, *anās, ěs* from *sum, penēs, ōs*, having *ossis* in the genitive, *compōs, and impōs*: also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, hercās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdos, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs, and pēs*, with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

20. *Is, us, and ys, in the end of a word, are short, as, Turīs, legīs, legimūs, annūs, Capys.*

Except. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, libris, nobīs, omīs* for *omnes, fructūs, manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs.*

Except. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis, or ěntis*; as, *lis, Samnis, Salamīs, Simōis*: to these add the adverbs *gratis* and *foris*; the noun *glis* and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs*: *ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Except. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, eūs*: also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, ūntis, or ōdis*; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amāthūs, tripūs.* To these add the genitive of the Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clīūs, Sapphūs, Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs.*

Except. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys, Trachys.*

The last syllable of every verse is common: or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

DERIVATIVES.

21. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus, from amo.		Exūlo, from exul, -ūlis
Auctionor, auctio, -ōnis.		Pāvidus, pāveo.
Auctoro, auctor, -ōris.		Quirito, quiris, -ītis.
Auditor, auditum.		Radīcor, radīx, -īcis.
Auspīcor, auspex, -īcis.		Sospīto, sospes, -ītis.
Caupōnor, caupo, -ōnis.		Pāvidus, pāveo.
Colōro, color, -ōris.		Nātura, nātus

Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,	māter
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.	lēgo.
Decōrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.	lēgi.
Decōro,	decus, -ōris.		

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, from dēcem.	Suspīcio, from suspīcor.	Mōbīlis, from mōveo
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus
Hūmanus, hōmo.	Sēcīus, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo, &c.
Rēgula, rēgo.	Pēnuria, pēnus.	

2. Short from long.

Arena and ārista, from areo.	Lūcerna, from lūceo.
Nōta, nōtus.	Dux, -ūcis dūco.
Vādum, vādo.	Stābilis, stābam.
Fīdes, fīdo.	Dītio, dis, dītis.
Sōpor, sōpio.	Quāsillus, quāsillus, &c.

COMPOUNDS.

22. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as, *Dēdūco* of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prāfero*, *antēfero*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlo*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūldio*, *excūdo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investigo*, *prāgrāvo*, *prāmāto*, *rēlēgo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *ecceāmus*, *prāgrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco*, *dīffīdit* from *dīffīdo*, and *dīffūlit* from *dīffīdo*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēlit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus*, and *depenēmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *fax*, -*aucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Except. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*; *dējēro*, *pejēro*, *innūba*, *prōnūba*, *maledīcus*, *veredīcus*, *nīhīlum*, *semīsōpītis*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *nīhīl*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Except. 2. The preposition *pro* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus* and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propāgo*,

to propagate; *propino, profundo, propello, propulso, procura,* and *Proserpina*.

Except. 3. The inseparable prepositions *se* and *di* are long; as, *sēpāro, divello*; except *dirimo, disertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmitto, rēfero*: except the impersonal verb *rēfert*.

Except. 4. *E, i,* and *o*, in the end of the former compounding words are usually shortened; as, *nēfas, nēque, patēfacio, &c. omnīpotens, agricolā, significo, &c. duōdecim, hōdie, sacrosanctus, &c.* But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long, when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem, &c.* And when the compounding words may be taken separately; as, *ludimagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis, &c.* *Idem* in the masculine is long, in the neuter short; also *ubique, ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphasis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute, grave, circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [´]; as, *prófero, prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone, and it is thus marked, [˘]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the last syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ˆ]; as, *anáre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquó, continúo, doctè, uná, &c.* to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelled in the same way. So *poétá, gloriá, in*

the ablative; *fructus, tumultus*, in the genitive; *nostram, vestram*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*; *ergo*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompili*, for *Pompilii*; *amavis*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line. The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it has its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two Syllables.

<i>Spondæus</i> ,	consists of two long; as, <i>omnēs</i> .
<i>Pyrrhichius</i> ,	two short; as, <i>dēs</i> .
<i>Iambus</i> ,	a short and a long; as, <i>amāns</i> .
<i>Trochæus</i> ,	a long and a short; as, <i>servūs</i> .

2. Feet of three Syllables.

<i>Dactylus</i> ,	a long and two short; as, <i>scribēre</i> .
<i>Anapæstus</i> ,	two short and a long; as, <i>piētās</i> .
<i>Amphimæcer</i> ,	a long, a short, and a long; as <i>chāritās</i> .
<i>Tribrāchys</i> ,	three short; as, <i>dōminūs</i> .

The following are not much used.

Molossus,	dēlectānt.	Bacchius,	dōlōrēs.
Amphibrachys,	hōnōrē.	Antibacchius.	pēlluntūr.

3. Feet of four Syllables.

Antispastus,	Alēxāndēr.	Pæon, primus,	tēmpōribūs.
Ionicus minor,	prōpērārānt.	Pæon secundus,	pōtēntiā.
Ionicus major,	cālcārībūs.	Pæon tertius,	ānimātūs
Proceleusmaticus,	hōmīnībūs.	Pæon quartus,	cēlērītās.
Dispondeus,	ōrātōrēs.	Epitritus primus,	vōlūptātēs.
Dijambus,	āmpnītās.	Epitritus secundus,	pœnitētiās
Chorambus,	pōntificēs.	Epitritus tertius,	discōrdiās.
Ditrochæus,	capitōlēs.	Epitritus quartus,	fortānātūs

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSES.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees:

Ludère- | quæ vél- | lém cālā | mō pēr- | miſit ā- | grēſti. *Vir*
Infāu- | dūm, Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō | vārēdo- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōhō- | lēs mā- | gnūm. *Virg.*
Jōvis | incē- | mētūm.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnīā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīnī- | līs vō- | cēmque cō- | lōrēnque
Et flavos crines.—

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee, and the first and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīs- | quē sūa. *Propert.*
Cārnīnī- | būs vī | vēs tēm- | pūs In ōm- | nē mēls. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two nemisticks or halves; the former, of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter always of two dactyles and another Cæsura; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quisquē sūa.
Cārnīnī | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs In | omnē mē- | ls.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet; to wit, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Maccē- | nās ktāvis | editē re- | gibus. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: in the first place a spondee; in the second a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Maccē- | nas atē- | vis | editē | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, a choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Návis | quæ tibi cré- | dítum.

Hor.

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

Hor.

5. SAPPHIC.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intè- | gèr vi- | tæ, scèlè- | risquè | púrâ.

Hor.

6. ADONIAN.

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Júpiter | argèt.

Horat.

7. PHARECRATIAN.

The Pharecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nigr's | æquorâ | vèntis.

Hor.

8. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, to wit, a spondee, dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Súmmám | nèc mètû- | ás dî- | ém, nèc | óptës.

Mar.

9. THE GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsure, then two dactyles; as,

Virtûs | rëpâl | sæ | nèscîâ | sordidæ.

Horat.

10. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsure; as,

Nèc sù- | mît, aut | pônît | sècû | rës.

Hor.

11. THE LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbitri | ó pöpü | lârîs | aüræ.

Hor.

Of the above kinds of verses, the two first take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactyle, trochaic, anapæstic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

12. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimēter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

<i>Dimeter</i> , Inār-		sīt æ-		stūō-		sūs.		<i>Hor.</i>
<i>Trimeter</i> , Sūs		ēt-		psā Rō-		inā vī rūs rūt.		<i>Id.</i>

But afterwards both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places, that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes the tribrachys. We also find the tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

<i>Dimeter</i> , Cānīdī-		ā trāc-		tāvīt		dāpēs.		<i>Hor.</i>
		Vīdē-		rē prōpē-		rāntēs dōmūm.		<i>Id.</i>
<i>Trimeter</i> , Quōquō		scēlē-		stī rūt tīs aūt cūr dēx-		tēris.		<i>Hor.</i>
Pavidūm-		que lēpō		r' aūt ād vēnām lāquōō grēm.				<i>Id.</i>
Altū		bīs āt-		quē cānī-		būs hōmī- cid' Hē'- ctōrēm.		

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter*, or *Octonarius*.

A verse which hath just the number of feet requisite, is called *Versus Acatalecticus*, an Acatalectic verse; if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus*; if there be a syllable too much, it is called *Hypercatalecticus* or *Hypermeter*.

NOTE. It is not of great importance, whether these names and several others of the same nature which follow, be remembered by the learner or not. They are here made use of, and explained, that they may not appear strange, when they occur in other books.

COMBINATION OF VERSES.

The different kinds of verses are variously combined in poems.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name *Monocolon*; that which has two kinds, *Dicolon*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricolon*.

That which consists of two kinds of verse, and always after two lines returns to the first, is called *Dicolon Diströphon*; as, when a single pentameter is alternately placed after an hexameter, which is named *Elegiac* verse, because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegeïa solve capillös.
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit.—*Ovid.*

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Triströphon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraströphon*; as,

Auream quisquís mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ.—*Hor.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Triströphon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraströphon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named the *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cætusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*; as,

Spond.	Dact.	Spond.	Spond.	Dact.	Spond.
Félix	qui pötü	it ré-	rüm cög-	noscéré	causâs, &c.
S.	D.	S.	S.	D.	S.
Illam	nön pöpü	li fâ	scês nön	pürpürâ	rëgüm.
D.	S.	D.	S.	D.	S.
Flévit, ét	infli-	dôs ägr-	täns dîs-	cördiâ	frâtrês. <i>Lucr.</i>

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figuræ* in Scanning. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diacresis*, *Systöle*, and *Diastöle*.

1. *Synalæpha* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel ; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant.—*Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōticū | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē | nēbānt.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected ; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei* ; as,

O pater, ō hominum, Divūmque eterna pōtestas.—*Virg.*

2. *Ecthlipsis* is when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it is the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel ; as,

O curas hominum ! O quantum est in rebus inane ?—*Pers.*
thus,

O | cū | rās hōmī | n', ō quān | t' ēst īn | rēbūs īn | ānē.

3. *Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one ; which is likewise called *Crisis* ; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaeton*. So *ēi*, in *Jeinde*, *Pompei* ; *ōi*, in *proinde* ; *ē*, *ā* in *atredā* ; thus,

Aurēā percussūm virgā, versūmque venenis.—*Virg.*

4. *Diacresis* divides one syllable into two ; as, *Trōiæ*, for *Trojæ*, *Persēus*, *milūus*, for *milvus*.

5. *Systöle* is when a long syllable is made short ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

Matri longā decem tulērunt fastīdia menses.—*Virg.*

6. *Diastöle* is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse ;

Confidans, si tantus, amōr et mænia condant.

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called *Prosthesis* ; as, *gnavus*, for *navus* ; *tetūli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a

word, is called *Eptenthēsis*; as, *reiligio*, for *reliġio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called *Paragōge*: as, *dicier*, for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called *Aphæresis*; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tedenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called *Syncope*; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deūm*, for *deorum*: if from the end, *Apocōpe*; as, *viden'* for *videsne*; *Antōnī*, for *Antoni'*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called *Metathēsis*; as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called *Antithēsis*; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

But what particularly deserves attention is scanning verse, especially hexameter, is the *Cæsura*.

Cæsura, is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

S. D. S.

At rē-gīnā grā-vī jā-m-dūdūm, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name *Triemimēris*. When on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: when it happens on the first syllable on the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēemimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mōl-li fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō.—*Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre dum rede-O; brevis est via, pasce capellas.—*Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Witho

this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rómæ mcenâ, tærrüt impigër Hännibäl ärmis. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully ; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it ; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

G

Dicta Sapientum

E GRÆCIS,

D. ERASMO ROTEROD. INTERPRETE.

*Aurea dicta, puer, quæ sunt hæc, mente reconde ;
Hinc poteris magnâ commoditate frui.*

Dicta Periandri Corinthii.

OMNIBUS placeto.	Opportunitatem expectato.
Bona res quies.	Mortalia cogita.
Periculosa temeritas.	Ne prior injuriam facias.
Semper voluptates sunt mortales :	Audi quæ ad te pertinent.
Honores autem immortales.	Probrum fugito.
Amicis adversâ fortunâ utentibus idem esto.	Responde in tempore.
Lucrum turpe, res pessima.	Ea facito quorum te non possit pœnitere.
Quicquid promiseris facito.	Ne cui invideas.
Infortunium tuum celato, ne voluptate afficias inimicos.	Oculis moderare.
Veritati adhæreto.	Quod justum est imitare.
Age quæ justa sunt.	Bene meritos honora.
Violentiam oderis.	Spem sove.
Principibus cede.	Calumniam oderis.
Voluptati tempera.	Affabilis esto.
A jurejurando abstine.	Cùm errâris, muta consilium.
Pietatem sectare.	Concordiam sectare.
Laudato honesta.	Diuturnam amicitiam custodi
A vitiis abstine.	Magistratus metue.
Beneficium repende.	Omnibus teipsum præbe.
Supplicibus misericors esto.	Ne loquaris ad gratiam.
Liberos instrue.	Ne tempori credideris.
Sapientum utere consuetudine.	Teipsum ne negligas.
Litem oderis.	Seniorem reverere.
Bonos in pretio habeto.	Mortem oppete pro patria.
Arcanum cela.	Ne quâvis de re doleas.
Cede magnis.	Ex ingenuis liberos crea.
Ne efferaris gloriâ.	Sperato tanquam mortalis.
Large cum utilitate.	Parcere tanquam immortalis.
Amicis utere.	Mortuum ne irrideto.
	Dilige amicos.
	Consule inculpatè.

dicta Biantis Prienensis.

IN speculo teipsum contem-
plare, et si formosus appa-
rebis, age quæ deceant for-
mam: sin deformis, quod in
facie minus est, vel deest,
id morum pensato pulchri-
tudine.

Audito multa.

Loquere pauca.

De Numine ne malè loquaris.

Quid sit autem ausculta.

Prius autem intellige; et de
inde ad opus accede.

Ne ob divitias laudaris virum
indignum.

Persuasionem cape, non vi.

Compara in adolescentiâ qui-
dem modestiam, in senectute
verò prudentiam.

dicta Pittaci Mitylenæi.

QUÆ facturus es, ea ne dix-
eris; frustratus enim ridebe-
ris.

Depositum redde.

Desidiosus ne esto.

A familiaribus in minutis rebus
læsus, feras.

Amico ne maledixeris.

Inimicum ne putes amicum.

Uxori dominare [*Christianè.*]

Quæ feceris parentibus, eadem
à liberis exspecta.

Inter amicos ne fueris iudex.

Ne contende cum parentibus,
etiãsi justa dixeris.

Ne geras imperium, priusquam
parere didiceris.

Infortunatum ne irriseris.

Audito libenter.

Ne lingua præcurrat mentem.

Ne festines loqui.

Nosce teipsum,

Legibus pare.

Volutatem coërce.

Ne quid nimis.

Inimicitiam solve.

Ante omnia venerare Numen.

Parentes reverere.

Quæ fieri non possunt, cave
concupiscas.

Uxorem ducito ex æqualibus;
ne, si ex ditioribus duxeris,
dominos tibi pares, non af-
fines.

dicta Cleobuli Lindii.

NE sis unquam elatus.

Domus curam age.

Libros evolve.

Justè judicato.

Bonis benefacito.

Liberos tibi charissimos erudi.

A maledicentiâ temperato.

Res amici diligas, ac perinde
serves ut tuas.

Lapis auri index, aurum ho-
minum.

Quod oderis, alteri ne feceris.

Voto nil pretiosius.

Ne cui miniteris; est enim non
liebre.

Suspicionem abjicito.

Parentes patientiâ vince.

Beneficii accepti nemento.

Inferiorem ne rejicias.
 Ne teipsum præcipites in dis-
 crimen.
 Citiùs ad infortunatos amicos,
 quàm ad fortunatos proficis-
 cere.

Aliena ne concupiscas.
 Mendax calumniâ vitam cor-
 rumpit.
 Mendaces odit quisque prudens
 et sapiens.

DICTA CHILONIS LACEDÆMONII.

NOSCE te ipsum.
 Ne cui inideas mortalia.
 Temperantiam exerce.
 Turpia fuge.
 Tempori parce.
 Justè rem para.

Sapientiâ utere.
 Multitudini place.
 Oderis calumnias.
 Ne quid suspiceris.
 Moribus probatis esto
 Ne fueris onerosus.

DICTA SOLONIS ATHENIENSIS.

DEUM cole.
 Parentes reverere.
 Amicis succurre.
 Veritatem sustineto.
 Ne jurato.

Légibus pareto.
 Cogita quod justum est.
 Iracundiæ moderare.
 Virtutem laudato.
 Ma'os odio prosequitor.

DICTA THALETIS MILESII.

PRINCIPEM honora.
 Amicos probato.
 Similis tui sis.
 Nemini promittito.
 Quod adest boni consulito.
 A vitiis abstineto.

Gloriam sectare.
 Vitæ curam age.
 Pacem dilige.
 Laudatus esto apud omnes.
 Susurronem ex ædibus ejice.

RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, et Spiritus Sancti.—Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA. Matth. vi.

PATER noster, qui es in cœlis. 1. Sanctificetur Nomen tuum. 2. Veniat Regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in cœlo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos à malo; Quia tuum est regnum, et potentia, et gloria, in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CREDO in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem cœli et terræ. 2. Et in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum. 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Mariâ Virgine. 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus et sepultus, descendit ad inferna. 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis. 6. Ascendit ad cœlos, sedet ad dextram Dei patris omnipotentis. 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos et mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem. 10. Remissionem peccatorum. 11. Carnis resurrectionem. 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen*

DECALOGUS, SIVE LEX DEI.

Locutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc.—Exod. xx.

EGO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui eduxi te ex *Ægypto*, è domo servitutis.

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in cœlo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra; neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia et quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, et misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, et observant præcepta mea.

Bonis benefacito.
 Maledicus ne esto.
 Existimationem retine.
 Æquum judica.
 Parentes patientiâ vince.
 Beneficii accepti memor esto.
 Ad prætorium stato.
 Consulus esto.
 Uttere virtute.

Iracundiam tempera.
 Trocho lude.
 Aleas fuge.
 Nilul ex arbitrio vitium feceris
 Minorem te ne contempseris.
 Alicna concupiscere noli.
 Illud stude quod justum est.
 Amorem libenter fertr

DISTICHORUM DE MORIBUS.

LIBER I.

Dei cultus præcipuus.

SI Deus est animus, nobis ut carmina dicunt,
 Hic tibi præcipue sit purâ mente colendus.

Somnolentia vitanda.

Plus vigila semper, nec somno deditus esto :
 Nam diuturna quies vitiiis alimenta ministrat.

Cohibenda lingua.

Virtutem primam esse puta compescere linguam :
 Proximus ille Deo, qui scit ratione tacere.

Sibi ipsi conveniendum.

Sperne repugnando tibi tu contrarius esse :
 Conveniet nulli qui secum dissidet ipse.

Nemo temerè culpandus.

S' vitam inspicias hominum, si denique mores,
 Cum culpas alios, nemo sine crimine vivit.

Utilitas divitiis anteponenda.

Quæ nocitura tenes, quamvis sint chara. relinque
 Utilitas opibus præponi tempore debet.

Mores pro tempore mutandi.

Et* levis et constans, ut res expostulat, esto :
 Temporibus mores sapiens sine crimine mutat.

Uxori non semper assentiendum.

Nil temerè uxori de servis crede querenti :
 Sæpe etenim mulier, quem conjux diligit, odit.

Instandum correctioni amici.

Cùmque mones aliquem, nec se velit ipse moneri,
 Si tibi sit charus, noli desistere cœptis.

* al Cca
 stans aut levis
 repugnante
 matro

Stulti verbis non vincuntur

Contra verbosos noli contendere verbis :
Sermo datur cunctis, annui sapientia paucis.

Amicus sibi quisque primus.

Dilige sic alius, ut sis tibi charus amicus,
Sic bonus esto bonis, ne te mala damna sequantur.

Rumores spargere vetitum.

Rumores fuge, ne incipias novus auctor haberi :
Nata nulli tacuisse nocet, nocet esse locutum.

Fides aliena non promittenda.

Rem tibi promissam certò promittere noli ;
Rara fides ideo est, quia multi multa loquuntur.

Judex quisque sit sui.

Cùm te aliquis laudat, judex tuus esse memento ;
Plus aliis de te, quàm tu tibi credere noli.

Beneficiorum ratio.

Officium alterius multis narrare memento ;
Atque aliis cùm tu benefeceris, ipse sileto.

Senio benè gesta referenda.

Multorum cùm facta senex et dicta recenses,
Fac tibi succurrant, juvenis quæ feceris ipse.

Suspicionis labes.

Ne cures si quis tacito sermone loquatur ;
Conscius ipse sibi de se putat omnia dici.

In prosperis de adversis cogitandum.

Cùm fueris felix, quæ sunt adversa caveto ;
Non eodum cursu respondent ultima primis.

Mors alterius non speranda.

Cùm dubia et fragilis sit nobis vita tributa,
In morte alterius spem tu tibi ponere noli.

Animus in dono aestimandus.

Exiguum munus cùm dat tibi pauper amicus,
Accipito placidè, penè et laudare memento.

Paupertas toleranda.

Infantem nudum cùm te natura creârit,
Paupertatis onus patienter ferre memento.

Mors non formidanda.

Ne timeas illam, quæ vitæ est ultima finis ;
Quæ mortem metuit, quod vivit perdit id ipsum.

Amicorum ingratitude fugienda.

Si tibi pro meritis nemo respondet amicus,
Incusare Deum noli, sed te ipse coërce

Frugalitas.

Ne tibi quid desit, quæsitis utere parcè ;
Utque quod est serves, semper tibi deesse putata.

Promissio iterata molesta.

Quod præstare potes, ne bis promiseris ulli ;
Ne sis ventosus, dum vis bonus ipse videri.

Ars arte deludenda.

Qui simulat verbis, nec corde est fidus amicus,
Tu quoque fac simile ; sic ars deluditur arte.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Noli homines blando nimium sermone probare ;
Fistula dulcè canit, volucrem dum decipit auceps.

Liberi artibus instruendi.

Cùm tibi sint nati, nec opes ; tunc artibus illos
Instrue, quò possint in opem defendere vitam.

Res quomodo æstimandæ.

Quod vile est, carum ; quod carum est, vile putato ;
Sic tibi nec cupidus, nec avarus habebereis ulli.

Culpata non facienda.

Quæ culpæ soles, ea tu ne feceris ipse ;
Turpe est doctori, cùm culpa redarguit ipsum.

Concedenda petenda.

Quod justum est petito, vel quod videatur honestum ;
Nam stultum est petere id quod possit jure negari.

Nota ignotis non commutanda.

Ignotum tibi tu noli præponere notis ;
Cognita iudicio constant, incognita casu.

Dies quisque supremus putandus.

Cùm dubia incertis versetur vita periculis,
Pro lucro tibi pone diem* quocunque laboras.

Obsecundandum amicis.

Vincere cùm possis, interdum cede sodali ;
Obsequio quoniam dulces retinentur amici.

Amicitia mutua officia.

Ne dubites, cùm magna petas, impendere parva ;
His etenim rebus conjungit gratia charos.

Amicitia rixas odit.

Litem inferre cave cum quo tibi gratia juncta est ;
Ira odium generat, concordia nutrit amorem.

Castigatio sine ira.

Servorum ob culpam cùm te dolor urget in iram,
Ipse tibi moderare, tuis ut parcere possis.

* et. qui
cunq̄.

Patientiâ vincendum.

Quem superare potes, interdum v.ace ferendo;
Maxima enim morum semper patientia virtus.

Quæsitâ ovis servanda.

Conserva potiùs, quæ sunt jam parta labore;
Cum labor in damno est, crescit mortalis egestas.

Consulendum sibi in primis.

Dapsilis interdum notis, et charus amicis,
Cum fueris felix, semper tibi proximus esto.

LIB. II. PRÆFATIO.

TELLURIS si fortè velis cognoscere cultus,
Virgilium legito. Quodd si magè nôsse laboras
Herbarum vires, Macer has tibi carmine dicet,
Corporis ut cunctos possis depellere morbos.
Si Romana cupis et civica noscère bella,
Lucanum quæras, qui Martis prælia dixit.
Si quis amare velis. vel discere amare legendo,
Nasonem petito. Sin autem cura tibi hæc est,
Ut sapiens vivas, audi quæ discere possis,
Per quæ semotum vitis traducitur ævum.
Ergo ades, et quæ sit sapientia disce legendo.

De omnibus benè merendum.

SI potes, ignotis etiam prodesse memento;
Utilius regno est meritis acquirere amicos.

Arcana Dei non scrutanda.

Mitte arcana Dei, cælumque inquirere quid sit;
Cum sis mortalis, quæ sunt mortalia cura.

Mortis timor gaudia vitæ pellit.

Linque metum lethi; nam stultum est tempore in omni,
Dum mortem metuis, amittere gaudia vitæ.

Iracundia cavenda.

Iratos de re incertâ contendere noli;
Impedit ira animum ne possit cernere verum.

Expendendum ubi opus est.

Fac sumptum properè, cum res desiderat ipsa;
Dandum etenim est aliquid, cum tempus postulat aut res.

Fortuna modica tutior.

Quod nimium est fugito, parvo gaudere memento;
Tuta magè est puppis modico quæ flumine fertur.

Occulta vitia reticenda.

Quod pudeat, socios prudens celare memento:
Ne plures culpent id, quod tibi displicet uni.

Occulta tandem revelantur

Nolo putes pravos homines peccata lucrari ;
 Temporibus peccata latent, sed tempore * parent.

Imbecillitas virtute compensatur.

Corporis exigui vires contemnere noli ;
 Consilio pollet cui vim natura negavit.

Cedendum potiori ad tempus.

Cui sciëris non esse parem te, tempore cede ;
 Victorem à victo superari sæpe videnus.

Rixandum cum familiaribus non esse.

Adversus notum noli contendere verbis ;
 Lis minimis verbis interdum maxima crescit.

Fortuna non quaerenda sorte.

Quid Deus intendat, noli perquirere sorte ;
 Quid statuatur de te sinè te deliberat ipse.

Luxus odium generat.

Invidiam nimio cultu vitare memento ;
 Quæ si non ædit, tamen hanc sufferre molestum est.

Animus non deponendus ob iniquum iudicium.

Esto animo forti, cùm sis damnatus iniquè ;
 Nemo diu gaudet, qui iudice vincit iniquo.

Reconciliatis lis non refricanda.

Litis præteritæ noli maledicta referre ;
 Post inimicitias iram meminisse malorum est.

Teipsum neque lauda neque culpa.

Nec te collaudes, nec te culpaveris ipse ;
 Hoc faciunt stulti, quos gloria vexat inanis.

Parsimonia.

Utere quæsitis parcè, cùm sumptus abundat ;
 Labitur exiguo, quod partum est tempore longo

Supercilium nonnunquam deponendum.

Inspiciens est, cùm tempus postulat, aut res ;
 Stultitiam simulare loco, prudentia summa est.

Neque prodigus, neque avarus.

Luxuriam fugito, simul et vitare memento
 Crimen avaritiæ ; nam sunt contraria famæ.

Loquaci parùm credendum.

Noli tu quædam referenti credere semper,
 Exigua iis tribuenda fides qui multa loquuntur.

Ebrius vinum non accuset.

Quæ † potu peccas, ignoscere tu tibi noli ;
 Nam nullum crimen vini est, sed culpa bibentis.

* i. e. appa-
 rent, unde
 patent, con-
 tra tibi lo-
 gum.

† et. potus.

Amicis consilia credenda.

Consilium arcanum tacito committe sodali ;
Corporis auxilium medico committe fideli.

Successus malorum ne te offendat.

Indignos noli successus ferre molestè ;
Indulget fortuna malis ut lædere possit.

Futuros casus prævidendos.

Prospice, qui veniunt, hos casus esse ferendos ;
Nara læviùs lædit, quicquid prævidimus antè.

Animus in adversis spe fovendus.

Rebus in adversis animum submittere noli ;
Spem retine ; spes una hominem nec morte relinquit.

Opportunitas cùm contingit tenenda.

Rem tibi quam noscìs aptam, dimittere noli ;
Fronte capillatâ, post est occasio calva.

Futura ex præteritis colligenda.

Quod sequitur specta, quodque imminet antè videto,
Illum imitare Deum, qui partem spectat utramque.

Vitæ ratio habenda.

Fortiùs ut valeas, interdum parsior esto ;
Pauca voluptati debentur, plura salutì.

Multitudini cedendum.

Judicium populi nunquam contempseris unis ;
Ne nulli placeas, dum vis contemnere multos.

Valetudo curanda.

Sit tibi præcipuè, quod primum est, cura salutis ;
Tempora ne culpes, cùm sis tibi causa doloris.

Somnia non observanda.

Somnia ne cures : Nam mens humana quod optat,
Dum vigilans sperat, per somnum cernit id ipsum

LIB. III. PRÆFATIO

HOC quicumque voles carmen cognoscere, lector
Quum præcepta ferat quæ sunt gratisima vitæ,
Commoda multa feres. Sin autem spreveris illud,
Non me scriptorem, sed te neglexeris ipse.

Dandam esse operam literis.

INSTRUE præceptis animam, nec discere cessa
Nam sinè doctrinâ vita est quasi mortis imago.

Moribus captanda fama.

Fortunæ donis semper parere memento ;
Non opibus bona fama datur, sed moribus ipsa.

Rectè agenda aliorum linguam se timeas.

Cùm rectè vivas, ne cures verba malorum ;
Arbitrii nostri non est quod quisque loquatur.

Amici crimen celandum.

Productus testis, salvo tamen antè pudore,
Quantumcunque potes, celato crimen amici.

Blandiloquentia suspecta.

Sermones blandos blæsosque cavere memento ;
Simplicitas veri * sana est, fraus ficta loquendi.

Ignava vita fugienda.

Segnitiam fugito, quæ vitæ ignavia fertur ;
Nam cùm animus languet, consumit inertia corpus.

Animus fessus relaxandus.

Interpone tuis interdum gaudia curis ;
Ut possis animo quemvis sufferre laborem.

Malo animo neminem reprehendas.

Alterius dictum, aut factum, ne carpseris unquam ;
Exemplo simili ne te derideat alter.

Hæreditas augenda.

Quod tibi sors dederit tabulis suprema notato ;
Augendo serva ; ne sis quem fama loquatur.

Senectus sit munifica.

Cùm tibi divitiæ superant in fine senectutis ;
Munificus facta vivas, non parcus amicis.

Verba attendenda, non os loquentis.

Utile consilium dominus ne despice servi,
Nullius sensum, si prodest, tempseris unquam.

Præsenti utendum fortunâ.

Rebus et in censu si non est quod fuit antè,
Fac vivas contentus eo quod tempora præbent.

Uxor spe dotis non querenda.

Uxorem fuge ne ducas sub nomine dotis ;
Nec retinere velis, si cœperit esse molesta.

Alieno sapere exemplo.

Multorum disce exemplo quæ facta sequaris,
Quæ fugias : vita est nobis aliena magistra.

Nihil ultra vires.

Quod potes, id tentes : operis ne pondere pressus
Succumbat labor, et frustra tentata relinquant.

Consentire videtur qui tacet.

Quod nôsti haud rectè factum, nolito scilicet,
Ne videre malos imitari velle tacendo

* Sen. fœsus,
i. e. indicium,
al. norma.

Rigor favore temperandus.

Judicis auxilium sub iniquâ lege rogato ;
Ipsæ etiam leges cupiunt ut jure regantur.

Feras quæ tuâ culpâ pateris.

Quod meritò pateris, patienter ferre memento ;
Cùmque reus tibi sis, ipsum te judice damna.

Multa legentia, sed cum judicio.

Multa legas facito : perfectis * perlege multa ;
Nam miranda canunt, sed non credenda, poëtæ.

* al. dige.

Modestè in convivio loquendum.

Intèr convivas fac sis sermone modestus :
Ne dicare loquax, dum vis urbanus haberi.

Iracundia uxoris non formidanda.

Conjugis iratæ nōlito verba timere :
Nam lachrymis struit insidias, dum scœmina plorat.

Quæsitis utendum, non abutendum.

Utèrè quæsitis, sed ne videaris abuti ;
Qui sua consumunt, cùm deest, aliena sequuntur.

Mors non formidanda.

Fac tibi proponas mortem non esse timendam :
Quæ bona si non est, finis tamen illa malorem est.

Uxor proba, si loquax, ferenda.

Uxoris linguam, si frugi est, ferre memento ;
Namque malum est te nolle pati, hanc non posse tacere.

Pietas erga parentes.

Æquâ diligitò charos pietate parentes ;
Nec matrem offendas, dum vis bonus esse parenti.

LIB. IV. PRÆFATIO.

SECURAM quicunque cupis traducere vitam,
Nec vitiiis hærerè animùm, quæ moribus obsunt ;
Hæc præcepta tibi semper relegenda memento ;
Invenies aliquid quo † te nitare magistro.

Divitiarum contemptus.

DESPICE divitias, si vis animo esse beatus ;
Quas qui suspiciunt, mendicant semper, avari.

Vivere secundùm naturam optimum.

Commoda naturæ nullo tibi tempore deerunt,
Si contentus eo fueris quod postulat usus.

Res ratione regenda.

Cùm sis incautus, nec rem ratione gubernes,
Noli fortunam, quæ ‡ nulla est, dicere cæcam.

† al. quo vi-
tæ utare. et
tu te utari.

‡ al. non est.

Amor pecuniæ ad usum.

Dilige * denarium, sed parcè dilige formam,
Quam nemo sanctus nec honestus captat † habere.

* al. denarii
† al. ab usu.

In valetudine ne opibus parcas.

Quum fueris locuples, corpus curare memento ;
Æger dives habet nummos, ‡ sed non habet ipsum.

‡ al. se

Castigatio paterna ferenda.

Verbera cùm tuleris discens aliquando magistri,
Fer patris imperium, cùm verbis exit in iram.

Certa et utilia agenda.

Res age quæ prosunt : rursus vitare memento,
In quibus error inest, nec spes est certa laboris.

Libentur donandum.

Quod donare potes, gratis § concede roganti ;
Nam rectè fecisse bonis in parte ¶ lucrosum est.

§ al. ne veniat
¶ al. lucrosum.

Suspicio statim expendenda.

Quod tibi suspectum est, confestim discute quid sit ;
Namque solent, primò quæ sunt neglecta, nocere

Venus abstinentiæ cohibenda.

Cùm te detineat Veneris damnosa voluptas,
Indulgere gulæ noli, quæ ventris amica est.

Homo malus, fera pessima.

Cùm tibi proponas animalia cuncta timere,
Unum hominem tibi præcipio plus esse timendum.

Sapientia fortitudini præferenda.

Cùm tibi prævalidæ fuerint in corpore vires,
Fac sapias ; sic tu poteris vir fortis haberi.

Amicus cordis medicus.

Auxilium à notis petito, si fortè laboras ;
Nec quisquam melior medicus, quàm fidus amicus.

Sacrificium spiritus dejectus,

Cùm sis ipse nocens, moritur cur victis a pro te ?
Stultitia est morte alterius sperare salutem.

Amicus ex moribus diligendus.

Cùm tibi vel socium, vel fidum quæris amicum,
Non tibi fortuna est hominis, sed vita petenda.

Avaritia vitanda.

Utere quæsiis opibus ; fuge nomen avari ;
Quid tibi divitiæ prosunt, si pauper abundas ?

Voluptas inimica fame.

Si famam servare cupis, dum vivis, honestam ;
Fac fugias animo, quæ sunt mala gaudia vitæ.

Senem etiam delirum ne irriseris.

**Cùm sapias animo, noli irridere senectam ;
Nam quicumque senet, sensus puerilis in illo est**

Opes fluxæ, ars perpetua.

**Disce aliquid ; nam cùm subito fortuna recessit,
Ars remanet, vitamque hominis non deserit unquam.**

Mores ex verbis cogniti.

**Perspicito tecum tacitus, quid quisque loquatur :
Sermo etenim mores et celat et indicat idem.**

Ars usu iuvanda.

**Exerce studium, quamvis perceperis artem ;
Ut cura ingenium, sic et manus adjuvat usum.**

Vitæ contemptus.

**Multùm ne cures venturi tempora fati ;
Non metuit mortem qui scit contemnere vitam**

Discendum et docendum.

**Disce, sed à doctis ; indoctos ipse doceto ;
Propaganda etenim rerum doctrina bonarum est.**

Bibendi ratio.

**Hoc bibe quod possis, si tu vis vivere sanus ;
Morbi causa mali nimia est * quandoque voluptas.**

* *al* quæcum-
que.

Ne damnes quod probaveris.

**Laudâris quodcumque palàm, quodcumque probâris
Hoc vide ne rursus levitatis crimine damnes.**

Circumspectus utrâque fortunâ esto.

**Tranquillis rebus quæ sunt adversa † timeto ;
Rursus in adversis meliùs sperare memento.**

† *al* cavato

Studio crescit sapientia.

**Discere ne cesses ; cura sapientia crescit ;
Rara datur longo prudentia temporis usu.**

Parcè laudandum.

**Parcè laudato ; nam quem tu sæpe probâris,
Una dies, qualis fuerit, monstrabit amicus.**

Discere non pudeat.

**Ne pudeat, quæ nesciêris, te velle doceri ;
Scire aliquid laus est ; ‡ turpe est nil discere velle.**

‡ *al* culpa.

Rebus utendum ad sobrietatem.

**Cùm venere et Baccho lis est, sed juncta voluptas ;
Quod blandum est animo, complectere, sed fuge lites.**

Tristibus et tacitis non fidendum.

**Demissos animo, ac tacitos vitare memento ;
Quà flumen placidum est, forsan latet altiùs unda.**

Sors sorti conferenda.

Cùm tibi displiceat rerum fortuna tuarum,
Alterius specta * quo sis discrimine pejor.

* et. qui et

Ultra vires nihil aggrediendum.

Quod potes id tenta; nam litus carpere romis
Totius est multò, quàm † velis tendere in altum.

† et. velum

Cum justo iniquè non contendendum.

Contra hominem justum pravè contendere uolii;
Semper enim Deus injustas ulciscitur iras.

Fortuna utraque æquè ferenda.

Ereptis opibus noli tu flere querendo;
Sed gaude potiùs, ‡ tibi si contingat habere.

‡ et. et m.

Ab amico quid ferendum.

Est jactura gravis, quæ sunt amittere damnis;
Sunt quædam, quæ ferre decet patienter amicum.

Tempori non confidendum.

Tempora longa tibi noli promittere vitæ;
Quocunque ingrederis sequitur mors, corpus ut umbra.

Deus quibus placandus.

§ Thure Deum piaca; vitulum sine crescat aratro; § et Ture
Ne credas placare Deum, dum cæde litatur.

A potentioribus læsus dissimula.

Cede locum læsus, fortunæ cede potenti;
Lædere qui potuit, prodesse aliquando valebit.

Castiga teipsum.

Cùm quid peccâris, castiga te ipse subindè;
Vulnera dum sanas, dolor est medicina doloris.

Amicus mutatus non vituperandus.

Damnaris nunquam, post longum tempus, amicum;
Mutavit mores; sed pignora prima memento.

Beneficiis collatis attende.

Gratiôr officiis, quò sis magè charior esto;
Ne nomen subeas quod dicitur || officiperda.

|| et. offici peram

Suspicionem tolle.

Suspectus cave sis, ne sis miser omnibus horis;
Nam timidis et suspectis aptissima mors est.

Humanitas erga servos.

Cùm fueris famulos proprios mercatus in usus,
Ut servos dicas, homines tamen esse memento.

Occasionem rei commodæ ne prætermittas.

Quamprimùm rapienda tibi est occasio prima,
Ne rursus quæras, quæ jam neglexeris antè.

Non latandum repentino obitu.

Morte repentinâ noli gaudere maiorum :

Felices obeunt, quorum sinè crimine vita est.

Pauper simulatum vitet amicum.

Cùm tibi sit conjux, * ne res et fama labore, * d. nec.

Vitandum ducas inimicum nomen amici.

Junge studium.

Cùm tibi contigerit studio cognoscere multa ;

Fac discas multa, et vites † nil velle doceri. † d. non

Brevitas memoriæ amica.

Miraris verbis nudis me scribere versus ?

Hos brevitatis sensûs fecit conjungere binos.

REGIMEN MENSÆ HONORABILE.

NEMO CIBUM CAPIAT, DONEC BENEDICTIO FIAT.

Dum manducatis,	{	Vultus hilares habea-	}	tis.
		Sal cultello capia-		
		Quod edendum sit, ne peta-		
		Non nisi depositum capia-		
		Rixas et murmura fugia-		
		Manibus erectis sede-		
		Mappam mundam tenea-		
		Nō scalpatis cavea-		
		Aliis partem tribua-		
Morsus non rejicia-				
Modicum sed crebrò biba-				
Grates DEO per CHRISTUM refera-				

Privetur mensa qui spreverit hæc documenta.

RUDIMENTA PIETATIS.

In nomine Dei, Patris, Filii, et Spiritus Sancti.—Amen.

ORATIO DOMINICA. Mat. d. vi.

PATER noster, qui es in caelis. 1. Sanctificetur Nomen tuum. 2. Veniat Regnum tuum. 3. Fiat voluntas tua, quemadmodum in caelo, sic etiam in terra. 4. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. 5. Et remitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos remittimus debitoribus nostris. 6. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos à malo; Quia tuum est regnum, et potentia, et gloria in secula. *Amen.*

SYMBOLUM APOSTOLICUM.

CREDO in Deum Patrem omnipotentem, Creatorem caeli et terræ. 2. **Et** in Jesum Christum, Filium ejus unigenitum, Dominum nostrum. 3. Qui conceptus est de Spiritu Sancto, natus ex Mariâ Virgine. 4. Passus sub Pontio Pilato, crucifixus, mortuus et sepultus, descendit ad inferna. 5. Tertio die resurrexit à mortuis. 6. Ascendit ad caelos, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis. 7. Inde venturus est judicatum vivos et mortuos. 8. Credo in Spiritum Sanctum. 9. Credo sanctam Ecclesiam catholicam, Sanctorum communionem. 10. Remissionem peccatorum. 11. Carnis resurrectionem. 12. Et vitam æternam. *Amen.*

DECALOGUS, SIVE LEX DEI.

Locutus est DEUS omnia verba hæc.—Exod. xx.

EGO sum Dominus Deus tuus, qui auxi te ex Ægypto, è domo servitutis.

I. Non habebis deos alienos in conspectu meo.

II. Ne sculpas tibi simulacrum, nec ullam imaginem effingas eorum, quæ aut supra sunt in caelo, aut infra in terra, aut in aquis sub terra; neque incurves te illis, neque colas ea. Ego enim sum Dominus Deus tuus, fortis, zelotes, vindicans peccata patrum in filios, idque in tertia et quarta progenie eorum qui oderunt me, et misericordiâ utens in millesimam eorum qui diligunt me, et observant præcepta mea.

III. Ne usurpes nomen Domini Dei tui temerè. Neque enim Dominus dimittet eum impunitum, qui nomen ejus vanè usurpaverit.

IV. Memento diem Sabbati sanctifices. Sex diebus operaberis, et facies omne opus tuum. At Septimo die Sabbatum erit Domino Deo tuo. Non facies ullum opus, nec tu, nec filius tuus, nec filia tua, nec servus tuus, nec ancilla tua, nec jumentum tuum, nec advena qui est intra portas tuas. Nam sex diebus fecit Deus cœlum, terram, et mare, et quæcunque in iis sunt; requievit autem die septimo, ideoque benedixit diei Sabbati, et sanctificavit eum.

V. Honora patrem tuum et matrem tuam, ut diu vivas in terra, quam tibi Dominus Deus tuus daturus est.

VI. Non occides.

VII. Non committes adulterium.

VIII. Non furaberis.

IX. Non dices contra proximum tuum falsum testimonium.

X. Non concupisces domum proximi tui, non concupisces uxorem proximi tui, nec servum ejus, nec ancillam, nec bovem, nec asinum, nec quicquam eorum quæ sunt proximi tui.

SUMMA LEGIS, MATTHEW xvii. 34.

PHARISÆI, quum audivissent quod IESUS silentium imposuisset Sadducæis, congregati sunt pariter. 35. Et interrogavit eum unus ex iis qui erat legis peritus, tentans, eum et dicens. 36. Præceptor quod præceptum maximum est in lege?

37. IESUS autem dixit illi; Ut diligas Dominum Deum tuum, ex toto corde tuo, et ex totâ animâ tuâ, et ex omni cogitatione tuâ. 38. Hoc est præceptum maximum et primum. 39. Secundum autem est simile illi; nempe, Ut diligas proximum tuum sicut te ipsum

40. Ex his duobus, præceptis pendent Lex et Prophetæ.

Quot sunt Christianæ Ecclesiæ Sacramenta?

Duo.

Quæ sunt illa?

Baptismus et sacra Cœna Domini.

INSTITUTIO BAPTISMI.

Cujus hæc sunt verba.—Matth. xxviii. 19. Mark. xvi. 16.

ITE et docete omnes gentes, baptizantes eos, *In nomine Patris, et Filii, et Spiritus Sancti.* Qui crediderit, et baptizatus fuerit,

servabitur : Qui non crediderit, condemnabitur. Et docete eos ut custodiant quicquid mandavi vobis ; et ecce ego vobiscum sum omnibus diebus, usque ad consummationem seculi.

Hæc promissio repetitur, cùm Scriptura Baptismum nominat Lavacrum regenerationis, et ablutionem peccatorum, Tit. iii. 5. Acts xxii. 16.

INSTITUTIO COENÆ DOMINI.

Cujus hæc sunt verba.—1 Cor. xi. 23.

Ego enim accepi à Domino nostro id quod tradidit vobis : Quòd dominus noster Iesus Christus, ea nocte qua proditus est, accepit panem : et, gratias actis, fregit, ac dixit ; *Accipite manducate, hoc est corpus meum, quod pro vobis frangitur ; Hoc facite ad memoriam mei.* Itidem ei poculum, postquam cœnasset, dicendo ; *Hoc poculum est novum illud fœdus per meum sanguinem : Hoc facite, quotiescunque biberitis, in mei recordationem.* Quotiescunque enim ederitis panem hunc, et poculum hoc biberitis, memorem Domini annunciabitis, usque quò venerit. Itaque quisquis ederit, panem hunc, vel biberit poculum Domini indignè, reus est corporis et sanguinis Domini. Probet autem quisque se ipsum, et ita ut pane illo edat, et de poculo illo bibat. Nam qui edit et bibit indignè, damnationem sibi ipsi edit et bibit, quia non discernit corpus Domini.

Hæc promissio à Paulo exprimitur, cùm inquit.

Poculum gratiarum actionis, quo gratias agimus, nonne communio est sanguinis Christi ? Panis quem frangimus, nonne communio est corporis Christi ? Quoniam unus panis, unum corpus, multi sumus. Nam omnes unius panis participes sumus.

GULIELMI LILII MONITA PÆDAGOGICA ;

SIVE CARMEN DE MORIBUS AD SUOS DISCIPULOS.

QUI mihi discipulus, Puer, es, cupis atque doceri,
 Huc ades, hæc animo concipe dicta tuo.
 Mane citus lectum fuge, mollem discute somnum :
 Templâ petas supplex, et venerare Deum.
 Attamen in primis facies sit lota manusque ;
 Sint nitidæ vestes, comptaque cæsaries.

Desidiam fugiens, cùm te schola nostra vocarit,
 Adsis ; nulla pigræ sit tibi causa moræ.
 Me Præceptorem cùm videris, ore saluta,
 Et condiscipulos ordine quosque tuos.
 Tu quoque fac sedens, ubi te sedisse jubemus :
 Inque loco, nisi sis jussus abire, mane.
 Ac magis ut quisque est doctrinæ munere clarus,
 Hoc magis is clarâ sede locandus erit.
 Scalpellum, calami, atramentum, charta, libelli,
 Sint semper studiis arma parata tuis.
 Si quid dictabo, scribes ; at singula rectè :
 Nec macula, aut scriptis menda sit ulla tuis.
 Sed tua nec laceris dictata aut carmina chartis
 Mandes, quæ libris inseruisse decet.
 Sæpe recognoscas tibi lecta, animoque revolvas :
 Si dubites, nunc hos consule, nunc alios.
 Qui dubitat, qui sæpe rogat, mea dicta tenebit ;
 Is qui nil dubitat, nil capit inde boni.
 Disce, puer, quæso ; noli dediscere quidquam :
 Ne mens te insimulet conscia desidiæ.
 Sisque animo attentus : quid enim docuisse juvabit,
 Si mea non firmo pectore verba premas ?
 Nil tam difficile est, quod non solertia vincat :
 Invigila, et parta est gloria militiæ.
 Nam veluti flores tellus, nec semina profert,
 Ni sit continuo victa labore mandis :
 Sic puer, ingenium si non exercitet, ipsum
 Tempus et amittit, spem simul ingenii.
 Est etiam semper lex in sermone tenenda,
 Ne nos offendat improba garrulitas.
 Incumbens studio, submissâ voce loqueris ;
 Nobis dum reddis, voce canorus eris.
 Et quæcunque mihi reddes, discantur ad unguem ;
 Singula et abjecto verbula redde libro.
 Nec verbum quisquam dicturo suggerat ullum ;
 Quod puero exitium non mediocre parit.
 Si quicquam rogit, sic respondere studebis,
 Ut lædem dictis et mereare decus.
 Non linguâ celeri nimis, aut laudabere tardâ ;
 Est virtus medium, quod tenuisse juvat.
 Et quoties loqueris, memor esto loquare Latinè ;
 Et veluti scopulos barbarâ verba fuge.
 Præterea socios, quoties te cunque rogabunt,
 Instrue ; et ignaros ad mea vota trahe.

Qui docet indoctos, licet indoctissimus esset,
 Ipse brevi reliquis doctior esse queat.
 Sed tu nec stolidos imitabere Grammaticastros,
 Ingens Romani dedecus eloquii ;
 Quorum tam fatuus nemo, aut tam barbarus cre est
 Quem non auctorem barbara turba probet.
 Grammaticas rectè si vis cognoscere leges,
 Discere si cupias cultius ore loqui ;
 Addiscas veterum clarissima scripta virorum,
 Et quos auctores turba Latina docet.
 Nunc te Virgilius, nunc ipse Terentius optat,
 Nunc simul amplecti te Ciceronis opus :
 Quos qui non didicit, nil præter somnia vidit,
 Certat et in tenebris vivere Cimmeriis.
 Sunt quos delectat (studio virtutis honestæ
 Posthabito) nugis tempora conterere ;
 Sunt quibus est cordi, manibus, pedibusve sodales.
 Aut alio quovis sollicitare modo ;
 Est alius, qui se dum clarum sanguine jactat,
 Insulso reliquis improbat ore genus.
 Te tam prava sequi nolim vestigia morum ;
 Ne tandem factis præmia digna feras.
 Nil dabis, aut vendes, nil permutabis emesve,
 Ex damno alterius commoda nulla feres.
 Insuper et nummos, irritamenta malorum,
 Mitte aliis ; puerum nil nisi pura decent.
 Clamor, rixa, joci, mendacia, furta, cachinni,
 Sint procul à vobis ; Martis et arma procul.
 Nil penitus dices, quod turpe aut non sit honestum
 Est vitæ ac pariter janua lingua necis.
 Ingens crede nefas cuiquam maledicta referre,
 Jurare aut magni nomina sacra Dei.
 Denique servabis res omnes atque libellos,
 Et tecum, quoties isque redisque, feres.
 Effuge vel causas faciunt quæcunque nocentem,
 In quibus et nobis displicuisse potes.

**TWO PRAYERS TO BE TAUGHT UNTO CHILDREN AT SCHOOL,
WITH A FORM OF BLESSING GOD BEFORE AND AFTER MEAT**

MORNING PRAYER.

O GOD! I praise thee for the Creation of the World, and for the redemption of mankind by thy Son Jesus Christ, and for thy many favours bestowed on me; thou didst safely take me from the womb, and hast ever since cared for me; thou hast by thy mercy caused me to be born within thy Church, where I was early given to thee in Baptism; thou hast afforded me the means of grace, and called me to the hope of glory.

But, O most merciful Father! I, a poor and miserable sinner, conceived in sin, and brought forth in iniquity, have gone astray from thee; I have not cared to know thee, and to do thy will, but have done my own will, and followed my foolish and sinful inclinations, and do therefore deserve thy wrath and curse. O Lord have mercy upon me, turn me unto thee, and grant me repentance and forgiveness of all my sins for Jesus Christ's sake. Let it from henceforth become my chief care to please thee, and to seek thy kingdom and righteousness. Work in me a true faith, a lively hope, and a fervent charity; make me humble, meek, patient, sober and just, and loving to all men, submissive and obedient to them that are over me, and well content and thankful in every condition of life. Grant that I may daily grow in the knowledge, love, and fear of thee. Create in me a clean heart, O God! and renew a right spirit within me.

I thank thee, O Lord! for thy care of me this night; watch over me this day; keep me mindful that I am always in thy sight; and grant that through the whole course of my life, I may be holy and harmless in all manner of conversation; that when this short and frail life is at an end, I may be made partaker of everlasting life, through the merits of Jesus Christ our Lord, in whose name and words I pray, *Our Father which art in Heaven, &c.*

EVENING PRAYER.

MOST gracious God! what shall I render unto thee for thy many and great benefits bestowed on me; though I have been an undutiful and disobedient servant unto thee, thou hast continued thy care and kindness for me ever since I was born, and hast preserved me this day: let me never forget thy goodness, but grant that thereby I may be led to repentance, and amendment of life. Preserve me from every thing that is

thy servant to thee, O Lord! keep me from cursing, swearing, and lying,—from pride, stubbornness, and idleness. Work in me an utter dislike of all uncleanness, of gluttony and drunkenness, of all malice and envy, of strife and contention, of deceit and covetousness. Give me grace to deny all ungodliness and worldly lusts, and to live godly, righteously and soberly in this present world. Cause me to understand and consider the laws and life of thy son Jesus Christ, that I may do his will, and follow his steps. Let not the cares of this life, nor the love of riches, nor evil company, nor the corrupt custom of the world, withdraw me from the obedience of thy laws; but strengthen and establish me by thy holy spirit, that I may live and die thy faithful servant.

O Lord. send thy gospel through the world: pour out plentifully the spirit of truth, holiness and peace, on all people: bless the church and nation: guide our rulers and magistrates: sanctify and assist the ministers of the gospel: visit all that are in trouble, and sanctify their afflictions to them: be gracious to all my kindred, friends and neighbours; and bless and forgive all mine enemies.

Lord! watch over me this night, and keep me ever mindful that I am shortly to die and come to judgment, that I may without delay turn to thee, and pass the time of my sojourning here in thy fear.—Good Lord! hear me, and grant these my desires, and what else thou knowest to be needful for me, for the sake of Jesus Christ our Lord; in whose name and words I pray, *Our Father, &c.*

GRACE BEFORE MEAT.

O LORD, be merciful unto us, and pardon our sins; sanctify those thy good benefits, that we, by the sober and thankful use of them, may be enabled for thy service, through Jesus Christ our Lord and Saviour.—*Amen.*

GRACE AFTER MEAT.

WE thank and praise thee, O Lord, the giver of all good! who has at this time fed our bodies; stir up in us a greater care for our souls; and grant that our short lives, which are so carefully sustained by thy bounty, may be spent in doing thy will. Lead us safely through this vain and sinful world, in which we are pilgrims and strangers, and at length bring us to everlasting rest through Jesus Christ.—*Amen.*

FINIS.

20
70.

OCT 1 - 1934



